

IBM Elastic Storage System  
6.1.8.3

*Deployment Guide*



**Note**

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in [“Notices” on page 183](#).

This edition applies to Version 6 release 1 modification 8 of the following product and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions:

- IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition for IBM® ESS (product number 5765-DME)
- IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition for IBM ESS (product number 5765-DAE)

IBM welcomes your comments; see the topic [“How to submit your comments” on page xvii](#). When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© **Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2020, 2023.**

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

---

# Contents

|                                                                                                             |            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Figures.....</b>                                                                                         | <b>vii</b> |
| <b>Tables.....</b>                                                                                          | <b>ix</b>  |
| <b>About this information.....</b>                                                                          | <b>xi</b>  |
| Who should read this information.....                                                                       | xi         |
| IBM Elastic Storage System information units.....                                                           | xi         |
| Related information.....                                                                                    | xvi        |
| Conventions used in this information.....                                                                   | xvii       |
| How to submit your comments.....                                                                            | xvii       |
| <b>Change history.....</b>                                                                                  | <b>xix</b> |
| <b>Chapter 1. ESS deployment quick sheet.....</b>                                                           | <b>1</b>   |
| <b>Chapter 2. ESS software deployment preparation.....</b>                                                  | <b>3</b>   |
| <b>Chapter 3. ESS common installation instructions.....</b>                                                 | <b>19</b>  |
| <b>Chapter 4. ESS new deployment instructions.....</b>                                                      | <b>23</b>  |
| <b>Chapter 5. ESS upgrade instructions.....</b>                                                             | <b>27</b>  |
| Serial option for online upgrade.....                                                                       | 30         |
| <b>Appendix A. ESS known issues.....</b>                                                                    | <b>33</b>  |
| <b>Appendix B. Adding additional nodes or building block(s).....</b>                                        | <b>43</b>  |
| Real-world ESS building block addition notes.....                                                           | 44         |
| <b>Appendix C. Configuring call home in ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS 3500, and ESS Legacy.....</b>     | <b>47</b>  |
| Disk call home for ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS 3500, and ESS Legacy.....                              | 47         |
| Installing the IBM Electronic Service Agent.....                                                            | 49         |
| Configuring call home on ESS systems.....                                                                   | 49         |
| Configuring proxy for call home.....                                                                        | 52         |
| ESS call home logs and location.....                                                                        | 53         |
| Overview of a problem report.....                                                                           | 56         |
| Problem details section of ESA.....                                                                         | 57         |
| Call home monitoring of ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS Legacy systems and their disk enclosures..... | 60         |
| Upload data.....                                                                                            | 61         |
| Uninstalling, reinstalling, and troubleshooting the IBM Electronic Service Agent.....                       | 62         |
| Test call home.....                                                                                         | 62         |
| Post setup activities.....                                                                                  | 64         |
| essinstallcheck enhancement of software and hardware call home .....                                        | 64         |
| Call home pre-installation worksheets.....                                                                  | 64         |

|                                                                                                                   |            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Appendix D. Security-related settings in ESS.....</b>                                                          | <b>69</b>  |
| Working with firewall in ESS.....                                                                                 | 69         |
| Working with SELinux in ESS.....                                                                                  | 69         |
| Working with sudo in ESS .....                                                                                    | 71         |
| <b>Appendix E. Enabling Chrony timeset in ESS.....</b>                                                            | <b>73</b>  |
| <b>Appendix F. Upgrading the POWER9 firmware.....</b>                                                             | <b>75</b>  |
| Manually updating a boot drive for ESS 5000.....                                                                  | 75         |
| <b>Appendix G. How to set up chronyd (time server) in non-ESS nodes.....</b>                                      | <b>77</b>  |
| <b>Appendix H. ESS protocol node deployment by using the IBM Spectrum Scale<br/>    installation toolkit.....</b> | <b>79</b>  |
| <b>Appendix I. Protocol virtual machine deployment on ESS 3500 I/O nodes.....</b>                                 | <b>83</b>  |
| <b>Appendix J. Sample scenarios with mixed ESS types.....</b>                                                     | <b>91</b>  |
| <b>Appendix K. ConnectX-5 or ConnectX-6 VPI support.....</b>                                                      | <b>95</b>  |
| <b>Appendix L. Client node tuning recommendations.....</b>                                                        | <b>97</b>  |
| <b>Appendix M. Capacity upgrade flow in ESS 5000.....</b>                                                         | <b>99</b>  |
| <b>Appendix N. Switch VLAN configuration instructions.....</b>                                                    | <b>105</b> |
| <b>Appendix O. Dual 24 port (48 ports) MGMT switch ESS configuration.....</b>                                     | <b>113</b> |
| <b>Appendix P. Replacing all POWER8 nodes in an environment with POWER9<br/>    nodes in online mode.....</b>     | <b>117</b> |
| <b>Appendix Q. EMS network card port assignment.....</b>                                                          | <b>121</b> |
| <b>Appendix R. Tips for migrating from xCAT based (5.3.7.x).....</b>                                              | <b>123</b> |
| <b>Appendix S. Enabling RoCE for IBM Elastic Storage Server.....</b>                                              | <b>127</b> |
| <b>Appendix T. Enabling goconserver.....</b>                                                                      | <b>139</b> |
| <b>Appendix U. POWER8 to POWER9 EMS container conversion.....</b>                                                 | <b>141</b> |
| <b>Appendix V. Summary of ESS deployment scenarios.....</b>                                                       | <b>143</b> |
| <b>Appendix W. The IPv6 support for the ESS cluster creation on a high-speed<br/>    network.....</b>             | <b>147</b> |
| <b>Appendix X. Multi-rail over TCP support in ESS.....</b>                                                        | <b>149</b> |
| <b>Appendix Y. Bring your own EMS.....</b>                                                                        | <b>151</b> |

|                                                                                                                         |            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Appendix Z. Dual EMS support in ESS.....</b>                                                                         | <b>165</b> |
| <b>Appendix AA. Network bridges cleanup from an EMS node (applicable for a<br/>POWER8 or POWER9 EMS node only).....</b> | <b>167</b> |
| <b>Appendix AB. IBM Elastic Storage System Utility Node (MTM 5149 - 23E).....</b>                                       | <b>169</b> |
| <b>Accessibility features for the system.....</b>                                                                       | <b>181</b> |
| Accessibility features.....                                                                                             | 181        |
| Keyboard navigation.....                                                                                                | 181        |
| IBM and accessibility.....                                                                                              | 181        |
| <b>Notices.....</b>                                                                                                     | <b>183</b> |
| Trademarks.....                                                                                                         | 184        |
| Terms and conditions for product documentation.....                                                                     | 184        |
| <b>Glossary.....</b>                                                                                                    | <b>187</b> |
| <b>Index.....</b>                                                                                                       | <b>195</b> |



---

# Figures

|                                                                                 |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. ESS 3200 container networking.....                                           | 7   |
| 2. ESS 3200 network diagram.....                                                | 7   |
| 3. ESS 3200 Ethernet ports and switch.....                                      | 8   |
| 4. ESS 3500 network.....                                                        | 9   |
| 5. Showing ESS GUI wizard.....                                                  | 46  |
| 6. ESS Call Home Block Diagram.....                                             | 47  |
| 7. ESS unified call home.....                                                   | 48  |
| 8. ESA portal after node registration.....                                      | 54  |
| 9. List of icons showing various ESS device types .....                         | 55  |
| 10. System information details.....                                             | 55  |
| 11. ESA portal showing enclosures with drive replacement events .....           | 56  |
| 12. Problem Description.....                                                    | 58  |
| 13. Example of a problem summary.....                                           | 59  |
| 14. Call home event flow .....                                                  | 59  |
| 15. Sending a test problem with ESA web user interface.....                     | 63  |
| 16. Protocol VM deployment on ESS 3500 I/O nodes.....                           | 83  |
| 17. Hardware requirements.....                                                  | 84  |
| 18. Protocol in a VM - logical network Protocol in a VM - logical network ..... | 85  |
| 19. ESS 3500 slot placement summary.....                                        | 85  |
| 20. One dedicated card for VM.....                                              | 86  |
| 21. Two dedicated cards for VM.....                                             | 86  |
| 22. 1 Gb network switch.....                                                    | 105 |
| 23. 11S label.....                                                              | 106 |

|                                                          |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 24. Switch port and switch markings.....                 | 106 |
| 25. RJ45 to serial cable and USB to serial cable.....    | 106 |
| 26. USB cable .....                                      | 107 |
| 27. Logical view of two switches.....                    | 113 |
| 28. Comparing TCP/IP and RoCE communications.....        | 127 |
| 29. Comparing TCP/IP on CPU and RDMA/TCP/IP off CPU..... | 128 |
| 30. Displaying network topology with bonding.....        | 130 |
| 31. Showing configuration without bond.....              | 130 |
| 32. Configuring interfaces.....                          | 134 |
| 33. Displaying topology overview.....                    | 136 |
| 34. LSN ports.....                                       | 153 |
| 35. EMSVM deployment flow.....                           | 155 |
| 36. 2U-E7300C front panel LEDs and buttons.....          | 169 |
| 37. Memory and slots.....                                | 172 |
| 38. Risers.....                                          | 172 |
| 39. Enclosure rear view.....                             | 173 |
| 40. DIMMs.....                                           | 174 |
| 41. Enclosure front view.....                            | 175 |
| 42. PCIe slots.....                                      | 175 |
| 43. Networks.....                                        | 176 |
| 44. Shasta card.....                                     | 176 |
| 45. Management ports.....                                | 177 |

---

# Tables

1. Conventions.....xvii

2. RHEL kernels..... 16

3. RHEL kernels..... 123



## About this information

---

### Who should read this information

---

This information is intended for administrators of IBM Elastic Storage<sup>®</sup> System (ESS) that includes IBM Spectrum Scale RAID.

### IBM Elastic Storage System information units

---

IBM Storage Scale System Utility Node documentation consists of the following information units.

| Information unit                         | Type of information                                                                                                                                    | Intended users                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hardware Planning and Installation Guide | This unit provides IBM Storage Scale System Utility Node information including technical overview, planning, installing, troubleshooting, and cabling. | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Quick Deployment Guide                   | This unit provides ESS information including the software stack, deploying, upgrading, setting up call home, and best practices.                       | System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based                                                      |
| Service Guide                            | This unit provides IBM Storage Scale System Utility Node information including servicing and parts listings.                                           | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Problem Determination Guide              | This unit provides ESS information including events, replacing servers, issues, maintenance procedures, and troubleshooting.                           | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Command Reference                        | This unit provides information about ESS commands and scripts.                                                                                         | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration  | This unit provides IBM Spectrum Scale RAID information including administering, monitoring, commands, and scripts.                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li><li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XD SM standard</li></ul> |

IBM Elastic Storage System 3500 Utility Node documentation consists of the following information units.

| Information unit                         | Type of information                                                                                                                | Intended users                             |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Hardware Planning and Installation Guide | This unit provides 3500 Utility Node information including technical overview, planning, installing, troubleshooting, and cabling. | System administrators and IBM support team |

| Information unit                        | Type of information                                                                                                              | Intended users                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Quick Deployment Guide                  | This unit provides ESS information including the software stack, deploying, upgrading, setting up call home, and best practices. | System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based                                                        |
| Service Guide                           | This unit provides 3500 Utility Node information including servicing and parts listings.                                         | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Problem Determination Guide             | This unit provides ESS information including events, replacing servers, issues, maintenance procedures, and troubleshooting.     | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Command Reference                       | This unit provides information about ESS commands and scripts.                                                                   | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration | This unit provides IBM Spectrum Scale RAID information including administering, monitoring, commands, and scripts.               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XDSM standard</li> </ul> |

IBM Elastic Storage System 5147-102 documentation consists of the following information units.

| Information unit                         | Type of information                                                                                                              | Intended users                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hardware Planning and Installation Guide | This unit provides ESS 5147-102 information including technical overview, planning, installing, troubleshooting, and cabling.    | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Quick Deployment Guide                   | This unit provides ESS information including the software stack, deploying, upgrading, setting up call home, and best practices. | System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based |
| Service Guide                            | This unit provides ESS 5147-102 information including servicing and parts listings.                                              | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Problem Determination Guide              | This unit provides ESS information including events, replacing servers, issues, maintenance procedures, and troubleshooting.     | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Command Reference                        | This unit provides information about ESS commands and scripts.                                                                   | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Information unit                        | Type of information                                                                                                | Intended users                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration | This unit provides IBM Spectrum Scale RAID information including administering, monitoring, commands, and scripts. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XD SM standard</li> </ul> |

IBM Elastic Storage System (ESS) 3500 documentation consists of the following information units.

| Information unit                         | Type of information                                                                                                              | Intended users                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hardware Planning and Installation Guide | This unit provides ESS 3500 information including technical overview, planning, installing, troubleshooting, and cabling.        | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Quick Deployment Guide                   | This unit provides ESS information including the software stack, deploying, upgrading, setting up call home, and best practices. | System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based                                                         |
| Service Guide                            | This unit provides ESS 3500 information including servicing and parts listings.                                                  | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Problem Determination Guide              | This unit provides ESS information including events, replacing servers, issues, maintenance procedures, and troubleshooting.     | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Command Reference                        | This unit provides information about ESS commands and scripts.                                                                   | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration  | This unit provides IBM Spectrum Scale RAID information including administering, monitoring, commands, and scripts.               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XD SM standard</li> </ul> |

IBM Elastic Storage System (ESS) 3200 documentation consists of the following information units.

| Information unit                         | Type of information                                                                                                       | Intended users                             |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Hardware Planning and Installation Guide | This unit provides ESS 3200 information including technical overview, planning, installing, troubleshooting, and cabling. | System administrators and IBM support team |

| <b>Information unit</b>                 | <b>Type of information</b>                                                                                                        | <b>Intended users</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Quick Deployment Guide                  | This unit provides ESS information including the software stack, deploying, upgrading, setting up call home, and best practices.  | System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based                                                        |
| Service Guide                           | This unit provides ESS 3200 information including servicing and parts listings.                                                   | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Problem Determination Guide             | This unit provides ESS 3200 information including events, replacing servers, issues, maintenance procedures, and troubleshooting. | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Command Reference                       | This unit provides information about ESS commands and scripts.                                                                    | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration | This unit provides IBM Spectrum Scale RAID information including administering, monitoring, commands, and scripts.                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XDSM standard</li> </ul> |

IBM Elastic Storage System (ESS) 3000 documentation consists of the following information units.

| <b>Information unit</b>                  | <b>Type of information</b>                                                                                                                      | <b>Intended users</b>                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hardware Planning and Installation Guide | This unit provides ESS 3000 information including technical overview, planning, installing, troubleshooting, and cabling.                       | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Quick Deployment Guide                   | This unit provides ESS information including the software stack, deploying, upgrading, and best practices.                                      | System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based |
| Service Guide                            | This unit provides ESS 3000 information including events, servicing, and parts listings.                                                        | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Problem Determination Guide              | This unit provides ESS 3000 information including setting up call home, replacing servers, issues, maintenance procedures, and troubleshooting. | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Command Reference                        | This unit provides information about ESS commands and scripts.                                                                                  | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Information unit                        | Type of information                                                                                                | Intended users                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration | This unit provides IBM Spectrum Scale RAID information including administering, monitoring, commands, and scripts. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XDSM standard</li> </ul> |

IBM Elastic Storage System (ESS) 5000 documentation consists of the following information units.

| Information unit                        | Type of information                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Intended users                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hardware Guide                          | This unit provides ESS 5000 information including system overview, installing, and troubleshooting.                                                                                                                               | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Quick Deployment Guide                  | This unit provides ESS information including the software stack, deploying, upgrading, and best practices.                                                                                                                        | System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based                                                        |
| Model 092 storage enclosures            | This unit provides information including initial hardware installation and setup, and removal and installation of field-replaceable units (FRUs), customer-replaceable units (CRUs) for ESS 5000 Expansion – Model 092, 5147-092. | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Model 106 storage enclosures            | This unit provides information including hardware installation and maintenance for ESS 5000 Expansion – Model 106.                                                                                                                | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Problem Determination Guide             | This unit provides ESS 5000 information including setting up call home, replacing servers, issues, maintenance procedures, and troubleshooting.                                                                                   | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Command Reference                       | This unit provides information about ESS commands and scripts.                                                                                                                                                                    | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration | This unit provides IBM Spectrum Scale RAID information including administering, monitoring, commands, and scripts.                                                                                                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XDSM standard</li> </ul> |

ESS Legacy documentation consists of the following information units.

| Information unit                        | Type of information                                                                                                                    | Intended users                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Quick Deployment Guide                  | This unit provides ESS information including the software stack, deploying, upgrading, and best practices.                             | System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based                                                        |
| Problem Determination Guide             | This unit provides information including setting up call home, replacing servers, issues, maintenance procedures, and troubleshooting. | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Command Reference                       | This unit provides information about ESS commands and scripts.                                                                         | System administrators and IBM support team                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration | This unit provides IBM Spectrum Scale RAID information including administering, monitoring, commands, and scripts.                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XDSM standard</li> </ul> |

## Related information

### Related information

For information about:

- IBM Spectrum Scale RAID, see [IBM Documentation](#).
- mmvdisk command, see [mmvdisk documentation](#).
- Mellanox OFED (MLNX\_OFED\_LINUX-4.9-7.1.0.1) Release Notes, go to <https://docs.nvidia.com/networking/display/mlnxofedv497100lts/release+notes>.
- Mellanox OFED (MLNX\_OFED\_LINUX-5.9-0.5.6.x) Release Notes, go to <https://docs.nvidia.com/networking/display/mlnxofedv590560/release+notes>.
- IBM Elastic Storage System, see [IBM Documentation](#).
- IBM Spectrum Scale call home, see [Understanding call home](#).
- Installing IBM Spectrum Scale and CES protocols with the installation toolkit, see [Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux® nodes with the installation toolkit](#).
- Detailed information about the IBM Spectrum Scale installation toolkit, see [Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples](#).
- CES HDFS, see [Adding CES HDFS nodes into the centralized file system](#).
- Installation toolkit ESS support, see [ESS awareness with the installation toolkit](#).
- IBM POWER8® servers, see [https://www.ibm.com/docs/en/power-sys-solutions/0008-ESS?topic=P8ESS/p8hdx/5148\\_22l\\_landing.htm](https://www.ibm.com/docs/en/power-sys-solutions/0008-ESS?topic=P8ESS/p8hdx/5148_22l_landing.htm).
- IBM POWER9™ servers, see [https://www.ibm.com/docs/en/ess/6.1.8\\_ent?topic=guide-5105-22e-reference-information](https://www.ibm.com/docs/en/ess/6.1.8_ent?topic=guide-5105-22e-reference-information).

For the latest support information about IBM Spectrum Scale RAID, see the IBM Spectrum Scale RAID FAQ in [IBM Documentation](#).

## Conventions used in this information

Table 1 on page xvii describes the typographic conventions used in this information. UNIX file name conventions are used throughout this information.

Table 1. Conventions

| Convention                    | Usage                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>bold</b>                   | Bold words or characters represent system elements that you must use literally, such as commands, flags, values, and selected menu options.<br><br>Depending on the context, <b>bold</b> typeface sometimes represents path names, directories, or file names. |
| <b><u>bold underlined</u></b> | <u>bold underlined</u> keywords are defaults. These take effect if you do not specify a different keyword.                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>constant width</b>         | Examples and information that the system displays appear in constant-width typeface.<br><br>Depending on the context, constant-width typeface sometimes represents path names, directories, or file names.                                                     |
| <i>italic</i>                 | <i>Italic</i> words or characters represent variable values that you must supply.<br><br><i>Italics</i> are also used for information unit titles, for the first use of a glossary term, and for general emphasis in text.                                     |
| <key>                         | Angle brackets (less-than and greater-than) enclose the name of a key on the keyboard. For example, <Enter> refers to the key on your terminal or workstation that is labeled with the word <i>Enter</i> .                                                     |
| \                             | In command examples, a backslash indicates that the command or coding example continues on the next line. For example:<br><pre>mkcondition -r IBM.FileSystem -e "PercentTotUsed &gt; 90" \<br/>-E "PercentTotUsed &lt; 85" -m p "FileSystem space used"</pre>  |
| {item}                        | Braces enclose a list from which you must choose an item in format and syntax descriptions.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| [item]                        | Brackets enclose optional items in format and syntax descriptions.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <Ctrl-x>                      | The notation <Ctrl-x> indicates a control character sequence. For example, <Ctrl-c> means that you hold down the control key while pressing <c>.                                                                                                               |
| item...                       | Ellipses indicate that you can repeat the preceding item one or more times.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                               | In <i>synopsis</i> statements, vertical lines separate a list of choices. In other words, a vertical line means <i>Or</i> .<br><br>In the left margin of the document, vertical lines indicate technical changes to the information.                           |

## How to submit your comments

To contact the IBM Spectrum Scale development organization, send your comments to the following email address:

scale@us.ibm.com



# Change history

---

| Version | Changes                         | PDF form number |
|---------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| 4       | Updates for ESS 6.1.8.3         | SC28-3456-03    |
| 3       | Updates for ESS 6.1.8.2         | SC28-3456-02    |
| 2       | Updates for ESS 6.1.8.1         | SC28-3456-01    |
| 1       | Initial version for ESS 6.1.8.0 | SC28-3456-00    |



# Chapter 1. ESS deployment quick sheet

The quick sheet lists concise sets of steps for the ESS deployment procedures. For more information, see the respective procedures.

| COMMON INSTRUCTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | NEW DEPLOYMENT                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Download the package from IBM Fix Central.</li><li>2. Populate the <code>/etc/hosts</code> file on the BMSnode.</li><li>3. Extract the package.<br/><code>ess??00_6.1.x.x_???-??_dme_ppc64le.sh --start-container</code></li><li>4. Enter the following information:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>o Is the BMShostname correct?</li><li>o Type container hostname.</li><li>o Type the container FSP IP address.</li></ul></li><li>5. Run <code>essrun config load</code>.<br/><code>essrun -N ems1,io1,io2,io3,io4 config load -p</code></li><li>6. Run <code>essrun --precheck</code>.<br/><code>essrun -N ems1,io1,io2,io3,io4 update --precheck</code></li></ol> <p>AFTER SPECIFIC BLOCK HAS BEEN RUN</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check health of the system, run the command.<br/><code>essrun -N io1,io2,io3,io4 healthcheck</code></li></ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. If the BMSnode needs to be updated, run this command (You might be prompted to run the command again, if the kernel is changed).<br/><code>essrun -N ems1 update --offline</code></li><li>2. If canisters or I/O nodes need to be updated, run this command.<br/><code>essrun -N io1,io2,io3,io4 update --offline --no-fw-update</code></li><li>3. Create network bonds.<br/><code>essrun -N ems1,io1,io2,io3,io4 network --suffix=hs</code></li><li>4. Set up the NTP server and clients.<br/><code>essrun -N io1,io2,io3,io4 timeset client --server-ip ntp.server.ip</code></li><li>5. Create the cluster.<br/><code>essrun -N io1,io2,io3,io4 cluster --suffix=hs</code></li><li>6. Add the BMS node to the cluster.<br/><code>essrun -N io1 cluster --add-ems ems1 --suffix=hs</code></li><li>7. Create the file system.<br/><code>essrun -N io1,io2,io3,io4 filesystem --suffix=hs</code></li><li>8. If needed, update the firmware; on each canister/I/O node, run these commands.<br/><code>mmchfirmware --type storage-enclosure</code><br/><code>mmchfirmware --type drive</code></li><li>9. Configure GUI hardware monitoring.<br/><code>essrun -N ems1,io1,io2,io3,io4 gui --configure</code></li><li>10. Set up call home. For more information about the call home configuration, see Configuring call home on ESS systems.</li></ol> |
| OFFLINE UPDATE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | ONLINE UPDATE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Update the BMSnode; from the BMSnode, not from the container, run this command.<br/><code>mmshutdown -a</code><br/><code>systemctl stop gpfsGUI</code></li><li>1. Update the BMSnode; from the container, run this command (You may be prompted to run a second time if the kernel is changed).<br/><code>essrun -N ems1 update --offline</code></li><li>2. If the POWER firmware needs to be updated, refer to the online documentation.</li><li>3. After the BMSnode is updated, from the container, run this command.<br/><code>essrun -N io1,io2,io3,io4 update --offline --no-fw-update</code></li><li>4. From each canister or I/O node, run this command.<br/><code>mmchfirmware --type storage-enclosure</code><br/><code>mmchfirmware --type drive</code></li><li>5. Start IBM Spectrum Scale; from the BMSnode, run this command.<br/><code>mmstartup -a</code></li><li>6. Enable <code>gpfsGUI</code> start on reboot.<br/><code>systemctl enable gpfsGUI</code></li><li>2. Run this command on a utility node.<br/><code>mmsql init</code></li><li>7. Start the GUI; from the BMSnode, not from the container, run following commands:<br/><code>systemctl start gpfsGUI</code></li></ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Update the BMSnode; from the BMSnode, not from the container, run this command.<br/><code>mmshutdown</code><br/><code>systemctl stop gpfsGUI</code></li><li>4. Update the BMSnode; from the container, run this command (You may be prompted to run a second time if the kernel is changed).<br/><code>essrun -N ems1 update --offline</code></li><li>5. Start IBM Spectrum Scale on the BMSnode.<br/><code>mmstartup</code></li><li>6. If the POWER firmware needs to be updated, refer to the documentation.</li><li>7. After the BMSnode is online, from the container, run this command.<br/><code>essrun -N io1,io2,io3,io4 update</code></li><li>8. Enable <code>gpfsGUI</code> start on reboot.<br/><code>systemctl enable gpfsGUI</code></li><li>9. Run this command on a utility node.<br/><code>mmsql init</code></li><li>10. Start the GUI; from the BMSnode, not from the container, run this command.<br/><code>systemctl start gpfsGUI</code></li><li>11. Rerun the <code>esscallhomeconf</code> command with the same arguments that you used when you configured the system. For more information, see Configuring call home on ESS systems.</li></ol>                                                                                                                                                                              |



## Chapter 2. ESS software deployment preparation

Install an ESS software package and deploy the storage servers by using the following information. The goal is to create a cluster that allows client or protocol nodes to access the file systems.

### Changes in this release

- Support for IBM Spectrum Scale 5.1.8.2
- ESS 3500 BMC update (12.66)
- MLNX\_OFED\_LINUX-4.9-7.1.0.1 (legacy)
- Security updates
- kernel-4.18.0-372.70.1.el8\_6
- Bug fixes, Security fixes, general improvements

### Support matrix

| Release          | OS                                     | Runs on                                                                                                        | Can upgrade or deploy                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ESS 3500 6.1.8.3 | Red Hat® Enterprise Linux 8.6 (x86_64) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• POWER9 EMS</li><li>• x86 EMS (BYOE)<sup>1</sup> from 6.1.8.3</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ESS 3500 nodes</li><li>• POWER9 EMS</li><li>• POWER9 protocol nodes</li></ul>                                                      |
| ESS 3200 6.1.8.3 | Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.6 (x86_64)  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• POWER9 EMS</li></ul>                                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ESS 3200 nodes</li><li>• POWER9 EMS</li><li>• POWER9 protocol nodes</li></ul>                                                      |
| ESS 3000 6.1.8.3 | Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.6 (x86_64)  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• POWER8 EMS</li><li>• POWER9 EMS</li></ul>                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ESS 3000 nodes</li><li>• POWER8 EMS</li><li>• POWER9 EMS</li><li>• POWER8 protocol nodes</li><li>• POWER9 protocol nodes</li></ul> |
| ESS 5000 6.1.8.3 | Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.6 (PPC64LE) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• POWER9 EMS</li></ul>                                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ESS 5000 nodes</li><li>• POWER9 EMS</li><li>• POWER9 protocol nodes</li></ul>                                                      |

| Release                                                                                              | OS                                                                                                                                       | Runs on                                                                          | Can upgrade or deploy                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ESS Legacy 6.1.8.3                                                                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.6 (PPC64LE)</li> <li>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.9 (PPC64LE)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>POWER8 EMS</li> <li>POWER9 EMS</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESS POWER8 I/O nodes (PPC64LE)</li> <li>ESS POWER8 protocol nodes (PPC64LE)</li> <li>ESS POWER9 protocol nodes (PPC64LE)*</li> <li>POWER8 EMS</li> <li>POWER9 EMS</li> </ul> |
| <sup>1</sup> x86 EMS (BYOE) can only upgrade or deploy the ESS 3500 node(s) and the VM image itself. |                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

## Prerequisites

- This document (ESS Software Quick Deployment Guide)
- SSR completes physical hardware installation and code 20.
  - SSR uses Worldwide Customized Installation Instructions (WCII) for racking, cabling, and disk placement information.
  - SSR uses the respective ESS Hardware Guide (ESS 3000 or ESS 5000 or ESS 3200 or ESS 3500) for hardware checkout and setting IP addresses.
- Worksheet notes from the SSR
- Latest ESS xz downloaded to the EMS node from Fix Central (If a newer version is available).
  - Data Access Edition or Data Management Edition: Must match the order. If the edition does not match your order, open a ticket with the IBM Service.
- High-speed switch and cables have been run and configured.
- Low-speed host names are ready to be defined based on the IP addresses that the SSR have configured.
- High-speed host names (suffix of low speed) and IP addresses are ready to be defined.
- Host and domain name (FQDN) are defined in the /etc/hosts file.
- ESS Legacy 6.1.x.x Only:** You must convert to mmvdisk before deploying the ESS Legacy 6.1.x.x container if you are coming from a non-container version such as ESS 5.3.x.x. If you have not done so already, convert to mmvdisk by using the following steps:
  - Check whether there are any mmvdisk node classes.

### mmvdisk nodeclass list

There should be one node class per ESS Legacy building-block. If the command output does not show mmvdisk for your ESS Legacy nodes, convert to mmvdisk before running the ESS Legacy 6.1.0.x container.

- Convert to mmvdisk by running the following command from one of the POWER8 I/O nodes or from the POWER8 EMS node.

```
gssgenclusterrgs -G gss_ppc64 --suffix=-hs --convert
```

You can also use -N with a comma-separated list of nodes.

**Note:** Wait for 5 minutes for daemons to recycle. The file system remains up.

## What is in the /home/deploy directory on the EMS node?

Unified container (May not be the latest and contains support for all platforms.)

## Support for signed RPMs

ESS or IBM Spectrum Scale RPMs are signed by IBM.

The GPG key is located in `/opt/ibm/ess/tools/conf`.

```
-rw-r-xr-x 1 root root 907 Dec 1 07:45 SpectrumScale_public_key.pgp
```

You can check whether an ESS or IBM Spectrum Scale RPM is signed by IBM as follows.

1. Import the GPG key.

```
rpm --import /opt/ibm/ess/tools/conf/SpectrumScale_public_key.pgp
```

2. Verify the RPM.

```
rpm -K RPMfile
```

## ESS 3000, ESS 5000, 3500, and ESS Legacy networking requirements

In any scenario you must have an EMS node and a management switch. The management switch must be split into two VLANs.

- Management VLAN
- Service/FSP VLAN

**Note:** To future proof your environment for ESS 3200, modify any existing management switches to the new VLAN configuration. For more information, see [Appendix N, “Switch VLAN configuration instructions,”](#) on page 105.

You also need a high-speed switch (IB or Ethernet) for cluster communication.

### ESS 3000

POWER8 or POWER9 EMS

It is recommended to buy a POWER9 EMS with ESS 3000. If you have a legacy environment (POWER8), it is recommended to migrate to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.1.x.x and use the POWER9 EMS as the single management server.

- If you are adding ESS 3000 to a POWER8 EMS:
  - An additional connection for the container to the management VLAN must be added. A C10-T2 cable must be run to this VLAN.
  - A public/campus connection is highly recommended in C10-T3. This is not a requirement but allows for a simple way to access the EMS and maintain a connection when the container starts.
  - A management connection must be run from C10-T1 (This should be already in place if adding to an existing POWER8 EMS with legacy nodes).
  - Port 1 on each ESS 3000 canister must be connected to the management VLAN.
- If you are using an ESS 3000 with a POWER9 EMS:
  - C11-T1 must be connected on the EMS to the management VLAN.
  - Port 1 on each ESS 3000 canister must be connected to the management VLAN.
  - C11-T2 must be connected on the EMS to the FSP VLAN.
  - HMC1 must be connected on the EMS to the FSP VLAN.

**Note:** It is highly recommended that you connect C11-T3 to a campus connection or run an additional management connection. This is not a requirement but allows for a simple way to access the EMS and maintain a connection when the container starts.

### ESS 5000 or ESS 3200

POWER9 EMS support only

EMS must have the following connections:

- C11-T1 to the management VLAN
- C11-T2 to the FSP VLAN
- C11-T3 to the campus network (recommended)
- HMC1 to the FSP VLAN

ESS 5000 nodes must have the following connections:

- C11-T1 to the management VLAN
- HMC1 to the FSP VLAN

ESS 3200 nodes must have the following connections:

- Single management connection per canister:
  - Each connection is split between 2 MAC addresses:
    1. BMC
    2. Operating system
  - The BMC connection requires a VLAN tag to be set for proper communication with the EMS node.

### **ESS 3200 requirements**

- Management connections
  - Shared management port (visible to OS)
- BMC connection
  - Shared management port (visible to BMC)
  - BMC traffic routed via VLAN 101
- High-speed connections
  - InfiniBand or Ethernet

### **Management switch**

- Typically, a 48-port switch
- Two VLANs required
  - Management VLAN (VLAN 102)
  - FSP/BMC VLAN (VLAN101)
- ESS 3200/ESS 3500 dedicated trunk ports
  - Routes BMC traffic to VLAN 101

**Note:** The VLANs shown here are default for the IBM Cumulus switch. The VLAN value can be modified according to your environment.

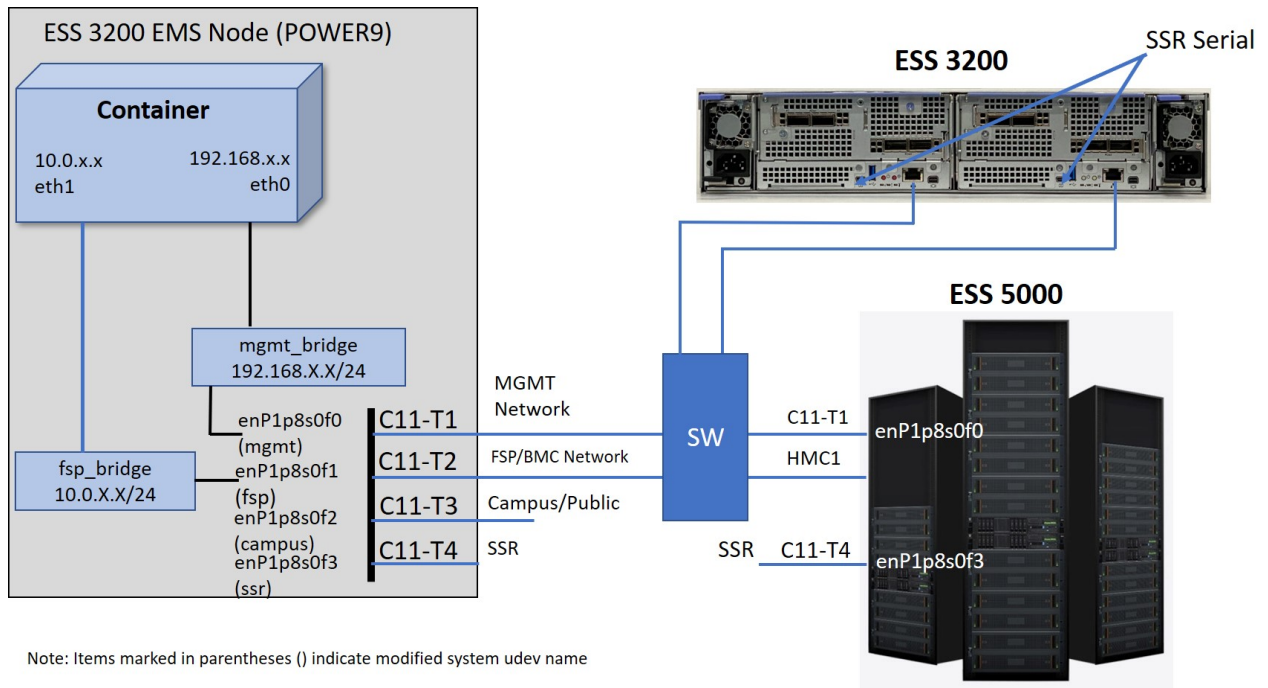


Figure 1. ESS 3200 container networking

## ESS Network (ESS 5000, ESS 3000, and ESS 3200)

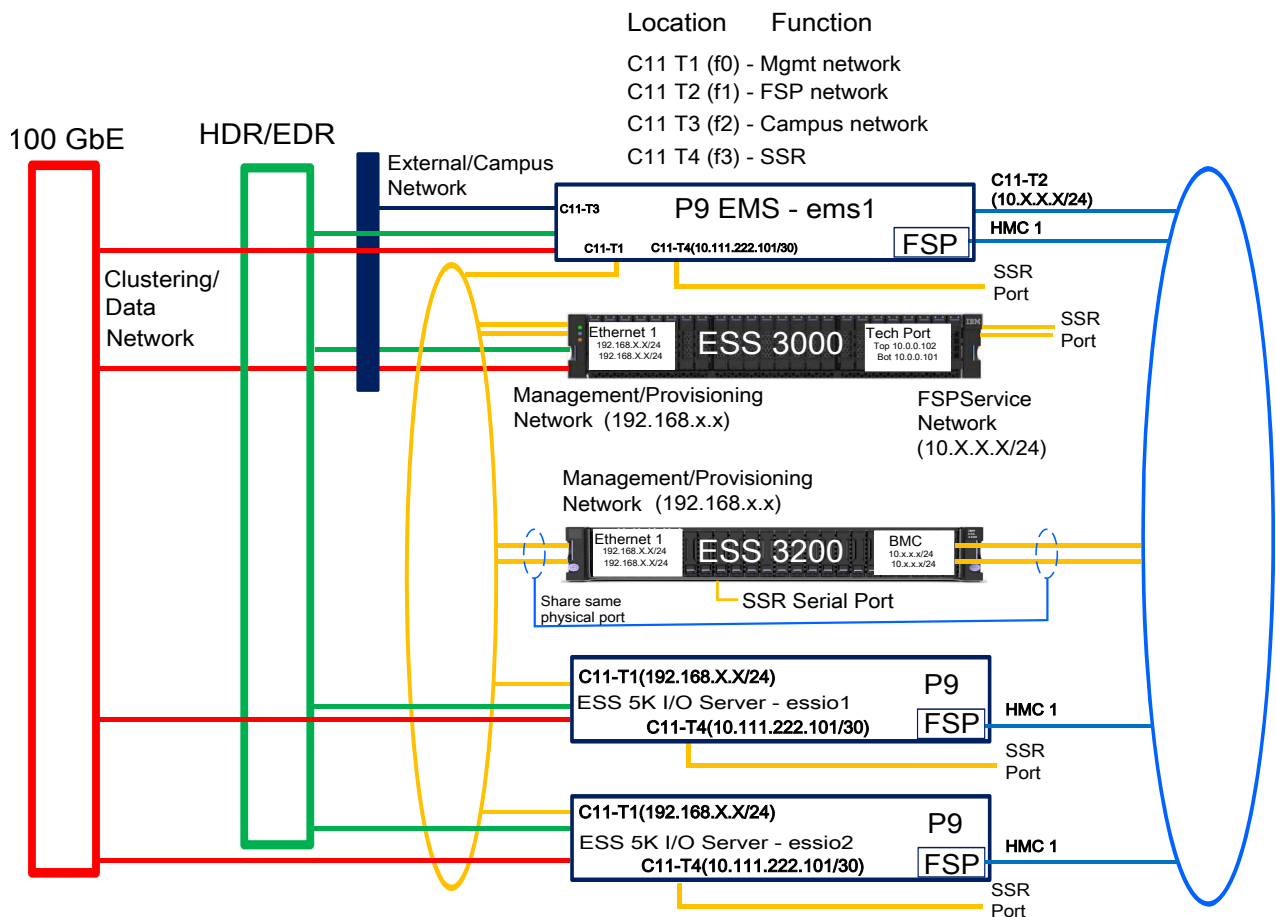


Figure 2. ESS 3200 network diagram

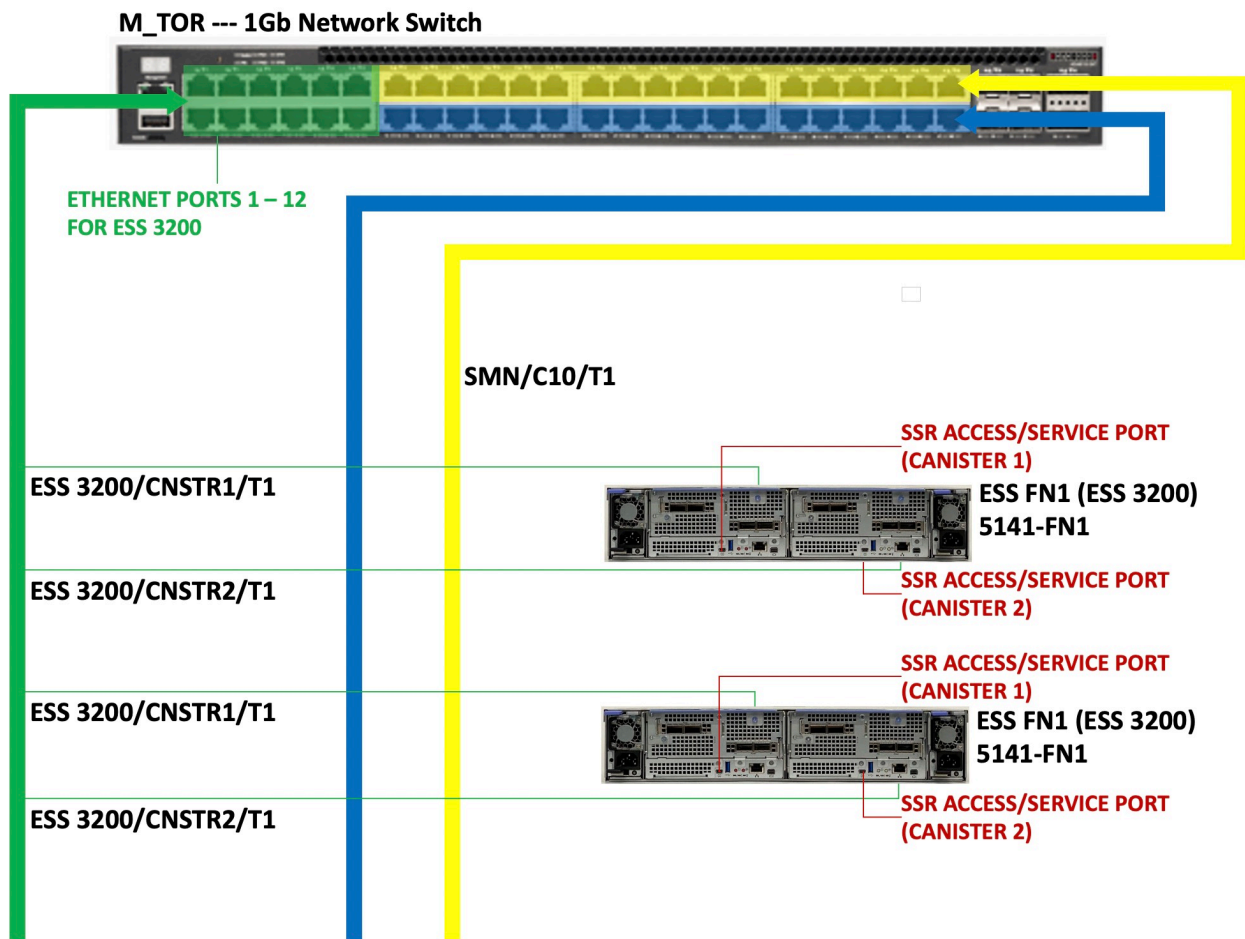


Figure 3. ESS 3200 Ethernet ports and switch

The ports highlighted in green are the ESS 3200 trunk ports. These are special ports that are for the ESS 3200 only. The reason for these ports is that each ESS 3200 canister has a single interface for both the BMC and the OS but unique MAC addresses. By using a VLAN tag, canister BMC MAC addresses are routed to the BMC/FSP/Service VLAN (Default is 101).

IBM racked orders have the switch preconfigured. Only the VLAN tag needs to be set. If you have an existing IBM Cumulus switch or customer supplied switch, it needs to be modified to accommodate the ESS 3200 trunk port requirement. For more information, see [Appendix N, “Switch VLAN configuration instructions,”](#) on page 105.

**Note:** It is mandatory that you connect C11-T3 to a campus connection or run an additional management connection. If you do not do this step, you will lose the connection to the EMS node when the container starts.

## ESS 3500 network requirements

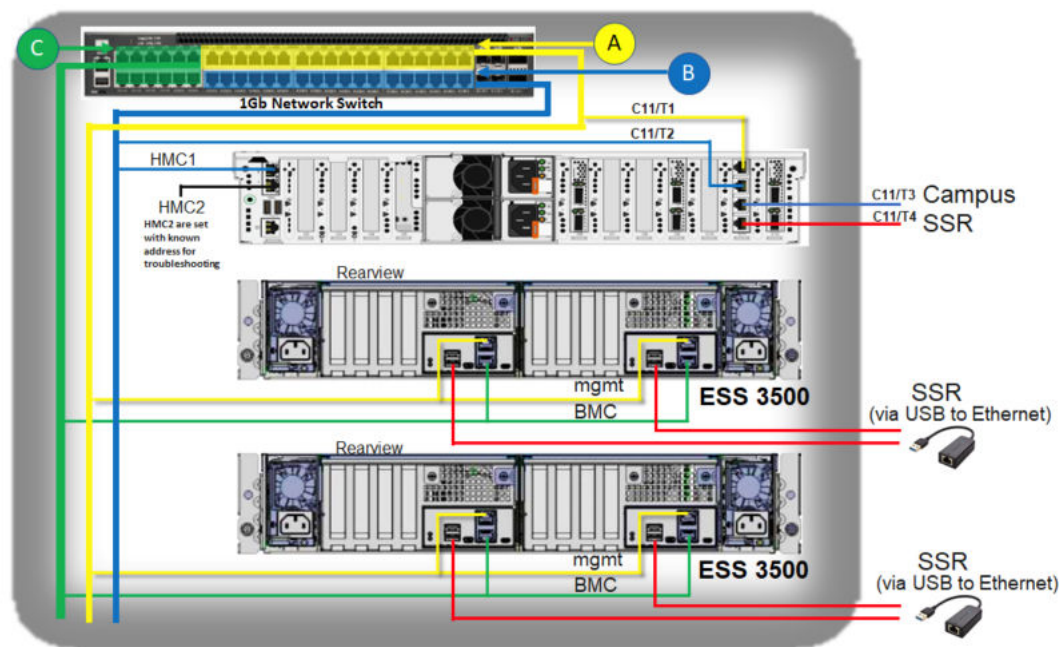


Figure 4. ESS 3500 network

## ESS Legacy

POWER8 or POWER9 EMS supported

POWER8 EMS must have the following connections:

- C10-T1 to the management VLAN
- C10-T4 to the FSP/Service VLAN
- C10-T2 to the management VLAN
- C10-T3 optional campus connection
- HMC1 to the FSP/Service VLAN

POWER9 EMS must have the following connections:

- C11-T1 to the management VLAN
- C11-T2 to the FSP VLAN
- HMC1 to the FSP VLAN
- C11-T3 to the campus or management network/VLAN (recommended)

POWER8 nodes:

- C12-T1 to the management VLAN
- HMC1 to the FSP VLAN

An output example after migrating the network from ESS 5.3.7.x before attempting to start the ESS 6.x.x.x container is as follows:

- Before creating the network bridges:

```
# ip a |grep "enP3\|bridge"
2: enP3p9s0f0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 192.168.45.20/24 brd 192.168.45.255 scope global noprefixroute enP3p9s0f0
3: enP3p9s0f1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
4: enP3p9s0f2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 9.155.113.184/20 brd 9.155.127.255 scope global noprefixroute enP3p9s0f2
```

```
5: enP3p9s0f3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
```

```
# Sample essmgr.yml
CONTAINER:
  BKUP: /home/backup
  CONTAINER_DOMAIN_NAME: gpfs.net
  CONTAINER_HOSTNAME: cems0
  FSP_BRIDGE_IP: 10.0.0.2
  FSP_BRIDGE_NAME: fsp_bridge
  FSP_CONTAINER_IP: 10.0.0.5
  FSP_INTERFACE: enP3p9s0f3
  FSP_SUBNET: 10.0.0.0/24
  INSTALLER_HOSTNAME: ems1
  LOG: /home/log
  MGMT_BRIDGE_IP: 192.168.45.2
  MGMT_BRIDGE_NAME: mgmt_bridge
  MGMT_CONTAINER_IP: 192.168.45.80
  MGMT_INTERFACE: enP3p9s0f1
  MGMT_SUBNET: 192.168.45.0/24
```

- After creating the bridges (./essmgr -n):

```
# ip a |grep "enP3\|bridge"
2: enP3p9s0f0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 192.168.45.20/24 brd 192.168.45.255 scope global noprefixroute enP3p9s0f0
3: enP3p9s0f1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq master mgmt_bridge state UP group default qlen 1000
4: enP3p9s0f2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 9.155.113.184/20 brd 9.155.127.255 scope global noprefixroute enP3p9s0f2
5: enP3p9s0f3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq master fsp_bridge state UP group default qlen 1000
65: mgmt_bridge: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 192.168.45.2/24 brd 192.168.45.255 scope global noprefixroute mgmt_bridge
67: fsp_bridge: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 10.0.0.2/24 brd 10.0.0.255 scope global noprefixroute fsp_bridge
```

## Code version

ESS Legacy, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS 5000, and ESS 3500 releases are included in ESS 6.1.6.x with two editions: Data Management Edition and Data Access Edition. An example of package names is as follows:

```
ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dme_ppc64le.tar.xz
ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le.tar.xz
ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dme_x86_64.tar.xz
ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_x86_64.tar.xz
```

### Note:

- The versions shown here might not be the GA version available on IBM Fix Central. It is recommended to go to IBM Fix Central and download the latest code.
- ppc64le in the package name implies that each container runs on a POWER®-based EMS. For details about functions supported by respective containers, see [“Support matrix” on page 3](#).

You can download the latest 6.1.x.x code (6.1.8.3 is the latest) from IBM Fix Central by using the following link.

- [IBM Fix Central download link](#)

A unified container is offered with two versions each (Data management + Data access). Example package names for each container are as follows:

```
// Unified Container (Data Access and Data Management versions)
ESS_DAE_BASEIMAGE-6.1.8.3-ppc64LE-Linux.tgz
ESS_DME_BASEIMAGE-6.1.8.3-ppc64LE-Linux.tgz
ESS_DAE_BASEIMAGE-6.1.8.3-x86_64-Linux.tgz
ESS_DME_BASEIMAGE-6.1.8.3-x86_64-Linux.tgz
```

## POWER8 considerations

If you are moving from an xCAT-based release (5.3.x) to a container-based release (6.1.x.x), the following considerations apply:

- You must add an additional management network connection to C10-T2.
- A public or additional management connection is recommended in C10-T3.
- You must stop and uninstall xCAT and all xCAT dependencies before installing the container.

## Remote management considerations

Data center access has become more restrictive nowadays. Here are some considerations to enable remote support:

- Consider adding campus connections to the HMC2 ports on all POWER servers (ESS Legacy, ESS 5000, POWER8 or POWER9 EMS). Consider cabling this port to a public network and setting a campus IP. This will allow remote recovery or debug of the EMS in case of an outage.
- Consider adding campus connections to C11-T3 (POWER9 nodes) or C10-T3 (POWER8 nodes).
- Consult with service about adding USB to Ethernet dongle to enable campus connections on the ESS 3200 system.
- Add campus connection to a free port on each ESS 3000 canister. Also consider adding SMART PDUs on ESS 3000 frames to help remotely power cycle the system.

## POWER8 and POWER9 considerations

- POWER8 and POWER9 EMS in the same cluster is not supported.
- Only a single instance of all management services supported (that is, single EMS).
- POWER8 only needs to exist as a management node if you are mixing a non-container-based release (5.3.x) with a container-based release (6.x.x.x).
- It is recommended that all nodes in the storage cluster contain the same ESS release and IBM Spectrum Scale version.
- It is recommended that you upgrade to the latest level before adding a building block.

**Note:** If you are mixing ESS Legacy 5.3.x and ESS 3000 on a POWER8 EMS, the following considerations apply:

- You cannot upgrade the EMS node from the ESS 3000 container.
- ESS 3000 detects if xCAT is installed on the host EMS node. If xCAT is installed, it stops the upgrade.
- You must upgrade the EMS node by using the legacy deployment procedure outlined in *ESS 5.3.x Quick Deployment Guide*.

## Migrating from an ESS Legacy environment (xCAT-based 5.3.x) to an ESS Legacy container-based environment (6.1.x.x)

The following guidance is for customers migrating from an xCAT-based release to a container-based release for POWER8 offerings.

### POWER9 EMS

You cannot run both POWER8 and POWER9 EMS nodes in the same environment for ESS Legacy. If you are moving a POWER9 EMS, migrate all services from the POWER8 EMS and uninstall xCAT. You can then re-use the POWER8 EMS for other purposes such as quorum node, client node, or spare EMS. The preference is to always use a POWER9 EMS if possible and you must not run multiple instances of GUI, performance monitoring collectors, etc. in the same cluster. For this requirement, there are exceptions for certain stretch cluster environments and if you are mixing ESS Legacy and container-based deployments such as ESS 5.3.7 on POWER8 and ESS 6.0.2.x on POWER9.

## POWER8 EMS

If you are migrating from ESS 5.3.7 to ESS 6.1.2.x on a POWER8 EMS, do the following steps:

1. Stop and uninstall xCAT by doing the following steps on a POWER8 EMS, outside of the container.

- a. Stop xCAT.

```
systemctl stop xcatd
```

- b. Uninstall xCAT.

```
yum remove xCAT*
```

- c. Remove dependencies.

```
yum remove dbus-devel dhcp bind java-1.8.0-openjdk
```

2. Add a container connection to C10-T2.
3. Add a campus connection to C10-T3, if it is not done already. (Recommended)
4. Update /etc/hosts with the desired container host name and IP address.

## Other notes

- The following tasks must be complete before starting a new installation (tasks done by manufacturing and the SSR):
  - SSR has ensured all hardware is clean, and IP addresses are set and pinging over the proper networks (through the code 20 operation).
  - /etc/hosts is blank.
  - The ESS tgz file (for the correct edition) is in the /home/deploy directory. If upgrade is needed, download from Fix Central and replace.
  - Network bridges are cleared.
  - Images and containers are removed.
  - SSH keys are cleaned up and regenerated.
  - All code levels are at the latest at time of manufacturing ship.
- Customer must make sure that the high-speed connections are cabled and the switch is ready before starting.
- All node names and IP addresses in this document are examples.
- Changed root password should be same on each node, if possible. The default password is `ibmesscluster`. It is recommended to change the password after deployment is completed.
- Each server's IPMI (x86) and ASMI passwords (POWER nodes) are set to the server serial number. Consider changing these passwords when the deployment is complete.
- Check whether the SSSD service is running on EMS and other nodes. Shut down the SSSD service on those nodes manually, before you upgrade the nodes.
- RHEL server nodes might be communicating to root DNS directly and are not routed through internal DNS. If this is not permitted in the environment, you might override the default service configuration or disable it. For more information about background and resolution options, see <https://access.redhat.com/solutions/3553031>.

## ESS best practices

- ESS 6.x.x.x uses a new embedded license. It is important to know that installation of any Red Hat packages outside of the deployment upgrade flow is not supported. The container image provides everything required for a successful ESS deployment. If additional packages are needed, contact IBM for possible inclusion in future versions.

- For ESS 3000, consider enabling TRIM support. This is outlined in detail in *IBM Spectrum Scale RAID Administration*. By default, ESS 3000 only allocates 80% of available space. Consult with IBM development, if going beyond 80% makes sense for your environment, that is if you are not concerned about the performance implications due to this change.
- It is recommended to setup a campus or additional management connection before deploying the container.
- If running with a POWER8 and a POWER9 EMS in the same environment (only supported in old mixed environments (ESS 6.0.x.x (ESS 3000) and ESS 5.3.7.x), it is best to move all containers to the POWER9 EMS. If there is a legacy PPC64LE system in the environment, it is best to migrate all nodes to ESS 6.1.x.x and decommission the POWER8 EMS altogether. In this way, you do not need to run multiple ESS GUI instances.
- If you have a POWER8 EMS, you must upgrade the EMS by using the legacy flow if there are xCAT based PPC64LE nodes in the environment (including protocol nodes). If there are just an ESS 3000 system and a POWER8 EMS, you can upgrade the EMS from the ESS 3000 container.
- If you are migrating the legacy nodes to ESS 6.1.x.x on the POWER8 EMS, you must first uninstall xCAT and all dependencies. It is best to migrate over to the POWER9 EMS if applicable.
- You must be at ESS 5.3.7 (Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.7 / Python3) or later to run the ESS 3000 container on the POWER8 EMS.
- You must run the **essrun config load** command against all the storage nodes (including EMS and protocol nodes) in the cluster before enabling admin mode central or deploying the protocol nodes by using the installation toolkit. For more information, see [Deploying protocols](#).
- If you are running a stretch cluster, you must ensure that each node has a unique `hostid`. The `hostid` might be non-unique if the same IP addresses and host names are being used on both sides of the stretch cluster. Run **gnrhealthcheck** before creating recovery groups when adding nodes in a stretch cluster environment. You can manually check the `hostid` on all nodes as follows:

```
mmdash -N { NodeClass | CommaSeparatedListofNodes } hostid
```

If `hostid` on any node is not unique, you must fix by running **genhostid**. These steps must be done when creating a recovery group in a stretch cluster.

- Consider placing your protocol nodes in file system maintenance mode before upgrades. This is not a requirement but you should strongly consider doing it. For more information, see [File system maintenance mode](#).
- Do not try to update the EMS node while you are logged in over the high-speed network. Update the EMS node only through a separate management or the campus connection (or virtual console).
- After adding an I/O node to the cluster, run the **gnrhealthcheck** command to ensure that there are no issues before creating vdisk sets. For example, duplicate host IDs. Duplicate host IDs cause issues in the ESS environment.
- Run the container from a direct SSH connection (or virtual console). Do not SSH from an I/O node or any node that might be rebooted by the container.
- Do not log in and run the container over the high-speed network. It is recommended to log in through the campus connection, additional management connection, or virtual console.
- You must stop IBM Spectrum Scale tracing (**mmtrace** | **mmtracectl**) before starting the container or deploying any node. The container attempts to block if tracing is detected, it is recommended to manually inspect each ESS node before attempting to deploy.
- Heavy IBM Spectrum Scale and I/O operations must be suspended before upgrading ESS.

Wait for any of the following commands that are performing file system maintenance tasks to complete:

- **mmadddisk**
- **mmapplypolicy**
- **mmcheckquota**
- **mmdeldisk**

- **mmfsck**
- **mmlssnapshot**
- **mmrestorefs**
- **mmrestripefile**
- **mmrestripefs**
- **mmrpldisk**

Stop the creation and deletion of the snapshots by using the **mmcrsnapshot** and **mmde1snapshot** commands during the upgrade.

- High-speed node names must contain a suffix of the management network names. An example is as follows:
  - Management network: `essio1.test.net`
  - High-speed network: `essio1-hs.test.net`
- The use of ciphers (vs AUTHONLY) in an ESS environment is still under investigation. This is especially true for the campus connection that are required for the EMS/EMSVM. You must be aware of any security implications that might be of concern in a customer environment due to the ciphers that are currently being used and the added concern over the campus connection.

## Support notes and rules

- You can mix IBM Storage Scale server levels in the same cluster, but this is not recommended. Best practice is to have all levels the same. This also includes the client cluster.
- ESA install/configure properly for call home to work. ESA runs on the POWER EMS.
- If possible, run the client nodes in a separate cluster than the storage.
- The `essrun` (ESS deployment Ansible wrapper tool run within the container) tool does not use the GPFS admin network. It uses the management network only to communicate from the container to each of the nodes.
- If POWER8 EMS only, consolidate potential xCAT and non-xCAT offerings to container versions.

Example: If you have ESS 5.3.7.x (Legacy POWER8 offering on Scale 5.0.5.x) and ESS 3000 (Containerized support for ESS 3000 on Scale 5.x.x.x and above), convert the Legacy 5.3.7.x to 6.1.x.x so that only containers are running on POWER8 EMS.

**Note:** This only applies to situations where there was already Scale 5.1.x.x+ in the environment.

**Note:** There is no container offering for BE so environments with BE would have to remain at 5.0.5 release level (but the POWER8 EMS could still move to all container version).

- If POWER8 EMS and POWER9 EMS are owned by the customer, it is recommended to consolidate to POWER9 EMS (all container versions).

Example: If POWER8 EMS was running 5.1.x.x (ESS 3000, ESS Legacy or both) and customer has a POWER9 EMS (running ESS 5000 or ESS 3200) then should migrate the containers from POWER8 EMS to POWER9 and discard the POWER8 EMS (single management node).

- If migrating from xCAT-based legacy offering to container based you must go from ESS 5.3.7.x.
- When you update ESS to 6.1.2.x for the first time, you must consider the implications of moving to MOFED 5.x. Review the following flash carefully for more information [Mellanox OFED 5.x considerations in IBM ESS V6.1.2.x](#).
- IBM Spectrum Fusion, IBM Spectrum Scale Container Native, and IBM Spectrum Scale CSI utilize the GUI rest-api server for provisioning of storage to container applications. Persistent Volume (PV) provisioning will halt when the ESS GUI is shut down and remain halted for the duration of the ESS upgrade, until the GUI is restarted. Ensure that the OpenShift and Kubernetes administrators are aware of this impact before proceeding.
- For ESS 3500, you must keep 1.5 TB or more space free if future capacity MES is planned (performance to hybrid). Thus, it is recommended to not use all available space when you create a file system for

the performance model. The default allocation is 80% of available space when you use the **essrun filesystem** command (for x86 nodes).

- Disable proxy server connections during fresh deployment/upgrade operations from the ESS container .
- If you are enabling SED, the recovery group must be enrolled (for SED) before creating any user vdisk.
- IBM Spectrum Scale Object is not supported on ESS 6.1.5.x.
- When referring Legacy throughout this document ESS is referring only the POWER 8 solutions.
- The protocol node deployment (adding a protocol node to a cluster, upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale RPMs, etc) is handled by using the IBM Spectrum Scale installation toolkit. A protocol node is not deployed by using the ESS deployment container.
- You can run a DNS vs /etc/hosts as long as the container can properly resolve all the nodes correctly during that deployment.

## Stretch cluster considerations

Consider A and B sites of the same cluster.

- All management networks (FSP/BMC/MGMT) and the high-speed network (InfiniBand/Ethernet) must be flat and single namespace.
- All nodes must have unique IP addresses and hostnames for the management networks and the high-speed network.
- All nodes must be reachable to each other over all networks.
- A common /etc/hosts file (or properly configured DNS) must be defined as per the best practices, and copied by using the deployment tools to all ESS nodes in the cluster.

## Client nodes

Client nodes need to be at MOFED 4.9.x or higher and converted to **verbsRDMA** core libs after the ESS cluster is moved to 6.1.2.x or higher. Moving to **verbsRDMA** core libs is especially important if **verbsRDMA** is in use in the storage cluster.

## Upgrade guidance

| From \ To | 6.0.2.0 | 6.0.2.1 | 6.0.2.2 | 6.1.0.0 | 6.1.0.1 | 6.1.1.0 | 6.1.1.1 | 6.1.1.2 | 6.1.2.0 | 6.1.2.1 | 6.1.2.2 | 6.1.2.3 | 6.1.2.4 | 6.1.2.5 | 6.1.2.6 | 6.1.2.7 | 6.1.3.0 | 6.1.3.1 | 6.1.4.0 | 6.1.4.1 | 6.1.5.0 | 6.1.5.1 | 6.1.6.0 | 6.1.6.1 | 6.1.8.0 | 6.1.8.1 | 6.1.8.2 | 6.1.8.3 |
|-----------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 6.0.2.0   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.0.2.1   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.0.2.2   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.0.0   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.0.1   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.1.0   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.1.1   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.1.2   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.2.0   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.2.1   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.2.2   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.2.3   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.2.4   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.2.5   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.2.6   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.2.7   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.3.0   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.3.1   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.4.0   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.4.1   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.5.0   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.5.1   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.6.0   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.6.1   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.8.0   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.8.1   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.8.2   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| 6.1.8.3   |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |

RED - NOT SUPPORTED  
YELLOW - SUPPORTED NOT TESTED  
GREEN - SUPPORTED

### Note:

- Upgrades to ESS 6.1.2.x follow the N-2 rule. You can upgrade from ESS 6.1.2.x, 6.1.1.x (that is, 6.1.1.2) or 6.1.0.x.
- Upgrades to ESS 6.1.5.x follow N-3 rule. You can upgrade from 6.1.2.x, 6.1.3.x, and 6.1.4.x.
- Starting with ESS 6.1.5.x, further jumps adhere to the N-3 rule

## Further legacy container migration guidance

You must migrate first to ESS 5.3.7.x before you upgrade to ESS 6.1.x.x (container version).

### ESS 5.3.x.x upgrade guidance

- You can upgrade to 5.3.7.x from 5.3.5.x (online) or 5.3.6.x (online).
- For online upgrade you can jump one OS version and for offline upgrade you can jump two OS versions.
  - Only exception is RHEL 7.7 to RHEL 7.9 upgrade. Because there is no RHEL 7.8.
  - Online upgrade to RHEL 7.7 from RHEL 7.6 can be done.
  - Upgrade to RHEL 7.7 from RHEL 7.5 must be done online.

### ESS 6.1.x.x upgrade guidance

- It is recommended to convert from ESS 5.3.7.x to ESS 6.1.2.x and follow the normal N-X rules. To convert to ESS 6.1.2.x, use the following table (based on the RHEL 7.9 kernel):

| Table 2. RHEL kernels |                                               |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| ESS                   | Kernel                                        |
| 6.1.2.7               | 3.10.0-1160.92.1.el7                          |
| 6.1.2.6               | 3.10.0-1160.83.1.el7<br>4.18.0-372.41.1.el8_6 |
| 6.1.2.5               | 3.10.0-1160.76.1.el7                          |
| 6.1.2.4               | 3.10.0-1160.71.1.el7                          |
| 6.1.2.3               | 3.10.0-1160.62.1.el7                          |
| 6.1.2.2               | 3.10.0-1160.49.1.el7                          |
| 5.3.7.6               | 3.10.0-1160.62.1.el7                          |
| 5.3.7.5               | 3.10.0-1160.59.1.el                           |
| 5.3.7.4               | 3.10.0-1160.49.1.el7                          |
| 5.3.7.3               | 3.10.0-1160.45.1.el7                          |
| 5.3.7.2               | 3.10.0-1160.31.1                              |
| 5.3.7.1               | 3.10.0-1160.24.1                              |
| 5.3.7.0               | 3.10.0-1160.11.1.el7                          |

An example of upgrade jump is as follows:

- To upgrade to ESS 6.1.2.2, you can only upgrade from 5.3.7.4 or lower versions (that is, less than equal to 5.3.7.4).
- To upgrade to ESS 6.1.2.3, you can only upgrade from 5.3.7.6 or lower versions.
- It is not recommended to upgrade from ESS 5.3.7.x to ESS 6.1.1.2 anymore. Upgrade directly to ESS 6.1.2.3 or ESS 6.1.2.4. If you are updating from ESS 6.1.1.2, upgrade to 6.1.2.3 or higher (do not upgrade to 6.1.2.2).
- For ESS 5.3.7.3, consider downgrading MOFED to MLNX\_OFED\_LINUX-4.9-3.1.5.3, and then convert to 6.1.2.3 or 6.1.2.4. This is to obtain full support for online upgrade when converting to RDMA core libs.
- When upgrading to 5.3.x.x, first upgrade to ESS 5.3.7.2 or ESS 5.3.7.3, and then upgrade to 6.1.2.3 or 6.1.2.4. This upgrade is to obtain full support for online upgrade when converting to RDMA core libs.
- You may need to modify the container unblock jumps from a specific 5.3.7.x level. Issue to the following command to upgrade the ESS level in the container:

```
vim /opt/ibm/ess/deploy/ansible/vars.yml
```

- Change (an example if you want to convert from ESS 5.3.7.1 or higher) LEGACY\_SUPPORTED\_VERSION: "5.3.7.3" to LEGACY\_SUPPORTED\_VERSION: "5.3.7.1".

For more information about the ESS 6.1.x.x upgrade, see [IBM Storage Scale Alert: Mellanox OFED 5.x considerations in IBM ESS V6.1.2.x+](#).



## Chapter 3. ESS common installation instructions

**Note:** You must convert to mmvdisk before using ESS Legacy.

The following common instructions need to be run for a new installation or an upgrade of an ESS system.

**These are the common instructions for any ESS fresh deployment (new cluster environments where the EMS did not exist).**

**Note:** All version numbers, host names, IP addresses that are used in the following sections are examples.

These instructions are based on steps required for a POWER9 EMS. Important POWER8 notes are outlined where needed. The following build is used for example purposes.

```
ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le.tar.xz
```

**Note:** If you have protocol nodes, add them to the commands provided in these instructions. The default /etc/hosts file has host names prt1 and prt2 for protocol nodes. You might have more than two protocol nodes.

1. Log in to the EMS node by using the management IP (set up by SSR by using the provided worksheet). The default password is `ibmesscluster`.
2. (Optional) **Set up a campus or a public connection (interface enP1p8s0f2) (The connection might be named 'campus').** Connect an Ethernet cable to C11-T3 on the P9 EMS node to your lab network. This connection serves as a way to access the GUI or the ESA agent (call home) from outside of the management network. The container creates a bridge to the management network, thus having a campus connection is highly advised.

**Note:** It is recommended but not mandatory to set up a campus or public connection. If you do not set up a campus or a public connection, you will temporarily lose your connection when the container bridge is created in a later step.

This method is for configuring the campus network, not any other network in the EMS node. Do not modify T1, T2, or T4 connections in the system after they are set by SSR, and use the SSR method only to configure T1 and T2 (if changing is mandatory after SSR is finished). That includes renaming the interface, setting IP, or any other interaction with those interfaces.

You can use the `nmtui` command to set the IP address of the campus interface. For more information, see [Configuring IP networking with nmtui tool](#).

3. Complete the /etc/hosts file on the EMS node. This file must contain the low-speed (management) and high-speed (cluster) IP addresses, FQDNs, and short names. The high-speed names must contain a suffix to the low-speed names (For example, `essio1-hs` (high-speed name) to `essio1` (low-speed name)).

```
127.0.0.1 localhost localhost.localdomain.local localhost4 localhost4.localdomain4

## Management IPs 192.168.45.0/24
192.168.45.20 ems1.localdomain.local ems1
192.168.45.21 essio1.localdomain.local essio1
192.168.45.22 essio2.localdomain.local essio2
192.168.45.23 prt1.localdomain.local prt1
192.168.45.24 prt2.localdomain.local prt2

## High-speed IPs 10.0.11.0/24
10.0.11.1 ems1-hs.localdomain.local ems1-hs
10.0.11.2 essio1-hs.localdomain.local essio1-hs
10.0.11.3 essio2-hs.localdomain.local essio2-hs
10.0.11.4 prt1-hs.localdomain.local prt1-hs
10.0.11.5 prt2-hs.localdomain.local prt2-hs

## Protocol CES IPs
10.0.11.100 prt_ces1.localdomain.local prt_ces1
```

```
10.0.11.101 prt_ces1.localdomain.local prt_ces1
10.0.11.102 prt_ces2.localdomain.local prt_ces2
10.0.11.103 prt_ces2.localdomain.local prt_ces2
```

**Note:**

- localdomain.local is just an example and cannot be used for deployment. You must change it to a valid fully qualified domain name (FQDN) during the /etc/hosts setup. The domain must be the same for each network subnet that is defined. Also, ensure that you set the domain on the EMS node (**hostnamectl set-hostname NAME**).

NAME must be the FQDN of the management interface (T1) of the EMS node. If you need to set other names for campus, or other interfaces, those names must be the alias but not the main host name as returned by the **hostnamectl** command.

You can set up the EMS FQDN manually or wait until prompted when the ESS deployment binary is started. At that time, the scripts confirm the FQDN and provides the user a chance to make changes.

- If you are planning to set up a supported ESS system with the p9 EMS node, add new ESS host names to /etc/hosts by using the same structure. For example, low-speed (management) and high-speed (cluster) IP addresses, FQDNs, and short names.
- Do not use any special characters, underscores, or dashes in the host names other than the high speed suffix (example: -hs). Doing this might cause issues with the deployment procedure.

4. Extract the installation package.

**Note:** Ensure that you check the version that is installed from manufacturing (SSR worksheet). If there is a newer version available on Fix Central, replace the existing image in /home/deploy with the new image and then remove the old tgz file before doing this step.

```
cd /home/deploy
xz --decompress ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le.tar.xz
tar xvf ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le.tar
ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le
ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le.sha256
```

5. Create the /home/log and /home/backup before starting the container.

6. Accept the license and install the accepted image.

```
./ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dme_ppc64le --start-container
```

During this step, you are first prompted to accept the license agreement. Press <userinput>1</userinput> to accept. You are then prompted to input answers to two questions before the installation starts.

- Confirm or set EMS FQDN.
- Provide the container short name.

Example of contents of the extracted installation package:

```
├─ 70-persistent-net-ems.rules
├─ classes
│   └─ essmgr.py
│   └─ essmgr.yml.py
│   └─ _init_.py
│   └─ _pycache_
│   └─ essmgr.cpython-36.pyc
│   └─ essmgr.yml.cpython-36.pyc
│   └─ _init_.cpython-36.pyc
```

```

├─ ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dme_xcat_ppc64le_binaries.iso
├─ ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dme_xcat_ppc64le.tar
├─ essmgr
├─ essmgr_p8.yml
├─ essmgr_p9.yml
├─ essmgr.yml
├─ essmkym1
├─ logs
|   └─ essmgr.yml_2022-05-16_18-16-28
|   └─ essmkym1_2022-05-16_18-16-28_log
├─ podman_rh7_ppc64le.tgz
├─ podman_rh8_ppc64le.tgz
├─ python3_rh7_ppc64le.tgz
├─ python3-site-packages_rh7_ppc64le.tgz
├─ Release_note.ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dme_xcat_ppc64le.txt
├─ rhels-7.9-server-extra.iso
├─ rhels-7.9-server-ppc64le.iso
├─ rhels-8.6-server-extra.iso
├─ rhels-8.6-server-ppc64le.iso
└─ rhels-8.6-server-x86_64.iso

```

In this step, you are prompted to provide these inputs:

- Container name (must NOT be in `/etc/hosts` or be resolvable by using DNS).
- Confirmation of the EMS FQDN (must match what is set for the management IP in `/etc/hosts`). If this value needs to be changed or set, **essmkym1** helps with that task. **essmkym1** is located in the extracted directory (example: `/home/deploy/ess5000_/home/deploy/ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le.dir`).
- EMS host name must be on the management network (also called xCAT). Other networks can be aliases (A) or canonical names (CNAME) on DNS or on the `/etc/hosts` file.

```
Is the current EMS FQDN c145f05zems06.gpfs.net correct (y/n):
```

- Remember not to add the DNS domain `localdomain` to the input:

```
Please type the desired container short hostname [changeme] : cems0
```

**Note:** The values in parentheses ([ ]) are just examples or the last entered values.

At this point, if all checks are successful, the image is loaded and container is started. Example:

```
ESS UNIFIED v6.1.8.3 CONTAINER root@cems0:/ #
```

7. Run the **essrun config load** command. This command determines the node information based on VPD and also exchange the SSH keys.

```
essrun -N essio1,essio2,ems1 config load -p
```

**Note:**

- Always include the EMS in this command along with all nodes of the same type in the building-blocks.

- Use the low-speed management host names. Specify the root password with -p.
- The password (-p) is the root password of the node. By default, it is `ibmesscluster`. Consider changing the root password after deployment is complete.
- The **config load** command needs to be run with -N on all the nodes of the cluster to update the `hosts.yml` file for BMC. If config load is run on the selected nodes only (For example, only on `essio` nodes, then `ems` node), the `hosts.yml` file will be overwritten with latest nodes of config load.

After this command is run, you can use -N *NodeGroup* for future **essrun** steps (For example, -N `ess_ppc64le`). There are different node group names for ESS 3000 and ESS Legacy.

8. Run the **essrun config check** command. This command does a check of the various nodes looking for potential issues prior to upgrade. Review the output carefully and make changes as needed before proceeding.

```
essrun -N essio1,essio2,ems1 update --precheck
```

---

## Chapter 4. ESS new deployment instructions

These instructions are used if you are deploying a new cluster or a new file system after completing the common installation instructions in [Chapter 3](#).

.

**Note:** The POWER8 or POWER9 firmware is not automatically upgraded by the **essrun** automation. For information about manually upgrading the server firmware, see [Appendix F, “Upgrading the POWER9 firmware,”](#) on page 75. You may use the **essinstallcheck** command to determine if a firmware upgrade is required after upgrading to ESS 6.1.x.x.

Before you start with these steps, you must complete the steps in [Chapter 3, “ESS common installation instructions,”](#) on page 19.

The following steps are covered in this topic:

- Upgrading the EMS and I/O nodes, if required.
- Creating network bonds.
- Creating the cluster.
- Adding the EMS node to the cluster.
- Creating the file system.
- Configuring performance monitoring and starting the GUI.
- Setting up call home.
- Setting up time server.
- Final health checks.

**Note:** You can update by using the management node names (management) or after the **config load** is run, you can update by using a group of nodes.

When the group is referenced in these instructions, `ess_ppc64le` is used as an example. If you are in an ESS 3000 environment, use `ess3500_x86_64`.

For the EMS node, you can use the group `ems`.

At this point, the user has already determined whether an upgrade is required. If the version initially found in `/home/deploy` on the EMS node is earlier than the latest available on IBM Fix Central, the latest version should be already downloaded and deployed according to [Chapter 3, “ESS common installation instructions,”](#) on page 19.

1. If an upgrade is required, upgrade the EMS node.

```
essrun -N ems1 update --offline
```

```
Please enter 'accept' indicating that you want to update the following list of nodes: ems1
>>> accept
```

**Note:**

- If the kernel is changed, you are prompted to leave the container, reboot the EMS node, restart the container, and run this command again.

For example:

```
essrun -N ems1 update
exit
systemctl reboot
```

A sample outputs is as follows:

```
ESS UNIFIED v6.1.8.3 CONTAINER
root@cems0:/ # exit
```

Navigate back to ESS 6.1.8.x extracted the directory and run the following commands:

```
/home/deploy/ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le.dir
./essmkym1
```

```
essrun -N ems1 update --offline
```

- You cannot upgrade a POWER8 EMS currently running ESS Legacy code (5.3.x with xCAT control) from an ESS 3000 container. If xCAT is installed on the host, you must first uninstall it and clean up any dependencies before attempting an EMS upgrade from the container. If ESS Legacy deployment is needed, do not remove xCAT and deploy the ESS Legacy. Otherwise, remove xCAT and use the container to upgrade EMS and I/O nodes.

**Note:** To check which nodes belong to certain nodeclasses, issue the following command:

```
lsdef -t group for ansible-inventory -i /vpd/Inventory --graph
```

- When you are updating the EMS, shut down the GUI. Do not start the GUI until you finish upgrading the EMS. Because the GUI is shut down, any containers that access the ESS storage through the REST API cannot access the storage temporarily.

2. If required, update the I/O nodes.

```
essrun -N <nodeclasses> update --offline --no-fw-update
```

Where node classes are as follows:

- legacy: gss\_ppc64le
- 5000: ess\_ppc64le
- 3000: ess\_x86\_64
- 3200: ess3200\_x86\_64
- 3500: ess3500\_x86\_64
- Protocol Power9: ces\_ppc64le

Update all node classes for all building blocks except EMS.

3. If required, update I/O and protocol nodes at the same time.

```
essrun -N prt01,prt02 update --offline
```

4. Create network bonds.

```
essrun -N essio1,essio2 network --suffix=-hs
essrun -N ems1 network --suffix=-hs
```

You can create bonds on I/O and EMS nodes at the same time:

```
essrun -N essio1,essio2,em1 network --suffix=-hs
```

5. Verify that the network adapters are configured for the correct network protocol (InfiniBand, Ethernet). Refer to [Appendix K, “ConnectX-5 or ConnectX-6 VPI support,” on page 95](#) for the configuration.
6. Run the network test. (Optional)

This test uses **nsdperf** to determine whether the newly created network bonds are healthy.

SSH from the container to an I/O node or the EMS node.

```
ssh essio1
ESSENV=TEST essnettest -N essio1,essio2 --suffix=-hs
```

**Note:** After you SSH to an I/O node, you exit from the container

This command performs the test with an optional RDMA test afterward if there is InfiniBand. Ensure that there are no errors in the output indicating dropped packets have exceeded thresholds. When completed, type `exit` to return back to the container to create a cluster.

7. Create the cluster.

```
essrun -N <nodeclasses> cluster --suffix=-hs
```

8. Add the EMS node to the cluster.

```
essrun -N essio1 cluster --add-ems ems1 --suffix=-hs
```

9. Create the file system.

```
essrun -N ess3500_x86_64 filesystem --name fs1 --suffix=-hs
```

**Note:**

- By default, this command attempts to use all the available space. If you need to create multiple file systems or a CES shared root file system for protocol nodes, consider by using less space. For example:

```
essrun -N ESSIONodeInCluster(management hostname) filesystem --suffix=-hs --size 80%
```

For more options such as blocksize, filesystem size, or RAID code, see the **essrun** command in the ESS Command Reference.

- This step creates combined metadata + data vdisk sets by using a default RAID code and block size. You can use additional flags to customize or use the **mmvdisk** command directly for advanced configurations.
- If you are updating ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS 3500 the default set-size is 80% and it must not be increased. If you are updating ESS 5000 and ESS Legacy, the default set-size is 100%. For additional options, see *essrun command*. The default block size for PPC64LE is 16M whereas for ESS 3000 it is 4M.
- If you are deploying protocol nodes, make sure that you leave space for CES shared root file system. Adjust the set-size slightly lower when you are creating this required file system for protocol nodes.
- For ESS 3500, you must keep 1.5 TB or more space free if future capacity MES is planned (performance to hybrid). Thus, it is recommended to not use all available space when you create a file system for the performance model. The default allocation is 80% of available space when you use the **essrun filesystem** command (for x86 nodes).
- Before creating a recovery group or a file system, check whether a self-encrypted drive (SED) is required. You cannot enroll recovery groups for the SED support after they are created.

## Final setup instructions

1. Log in to each node and run following command.

```
essinstallcheck -N localhost
```

Doing this step verifies that all software and cluster versions are up to date.

**Note:** For ESS 5000, a check is added that flags whether the WCE bit is enabled on any drive. If the WCE bit is enabled, refer the published flash for the recommended action.

2. From EMS node, outside of the container, run the following final health check commands to verify your system health.

```
gnrhealthcheck  
mmhealth node show -a
```

3. Set the time zone and set up Chrony.

Before getting started, ensure that Chrony and time zone are set correctly on the EMS and I/O nodes. Refer to [Appendix G, “How to set up chronyd \(time server\) in non-ESS nodes,”](#) on page 77 to perform these tasks before proceeding.

4. Set up call home. For more information, see [Appendix C, “Configuring call home in ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS 3500, and ESS Legacy,”](#) on page 47.

The supported call home configurations are:

- Software call home
- Node call home (including for protocol nodes)
- Drive call home

5. Set up the GUI, configure performance monitoring, add a GUI user, set a GUI user password, and start the gpfsgui.

- a. To configure GUI hardware monitoring from the container and configure performance monitoring, issue the following command:

```
essrun -N ems1,essio1,essio2 gui --configure
```

6. Refer to [Appendix L, “Client node tuning recommendations,”](#) on page 97.

## Chapter 5. ESS upgrade instructions

Use these instructions if upgrading an existing ESS environment (a cluster or a file system that already exists) after completing the common installation instructions in Chapter 3.

**Note:** The POWER8 or POWER9 firmware is not automatically upgraded by the **essrun** automation. For information about manually upgrading the server firmware, see [Appendix F, “Upgrading the POWER9 firmware,”](#) on page 75. You may use the **essinstallcheck** command to determine if a firmware upgrade is required after upgrading to ESS 6.1.x.x.



**Attention:** You must have a clean and healthy system before starting any ESS upgrade (online or offline). At least, the following commands must run free of errors when run on any node outside of container:

```
gnrhealthcheck  
mmhealth node show -a  
mmnetverify -N all
```

You can also run the **essrun healthcheck** command instead, from inside the container.

```
essrun -N NodeList healthcheck
```

Upgrade can be done by using the following methods

- Offline upgrade: This method requires a given node or nodes to have GPFS shut down before beginning. This method is faster than online update, in which nodes are upgraded in parallel including firmware, but the system is typically taken down for a period of time.
- Online upgrade: This method allows the cluster to stay fully available and the code is typically updated one node per building-block in parallel.

### Note:

- The EMS node and protocol node upgrades are available only in the offline mode.
- Where NodeClass is an ESS 3000, ESS 5000, or ESS Legacy node class. For more information, see the *mmisnodeclass* command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.
- On protocol nodes, IBM Spectrum Scale is not automatically upgraded by the **essrun** automation. It must be upgraded by using the installation toolkit or by using the **rpm** command. For more information, see [Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes](#) and [Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale components with installation kit](#) in IBM Spectrum Scale documentation.

### Online upgrade assumptions (I/O nodes only):

- The cluster is created with EMS, one or more ESS nodes, and optionally one or more ESS building blocks or protocol nodes.
- The file system is built and recovery groups are active and healthy.
- GPFS is active on all ESS nodes and quorum is achieved.
- New container is installed that will update the code on the EMS and I/O nodes.
- GUI and collector services are stopped on the EMS before starting the upgrade.

Before starting the online upgrade, make sure that all ESS nodes are active by running the following command from one of the cluster nodes:

```
mmgetstate -N NodeClass
```

Where *NodeClass* is your ESS 3000, ESS 5000, or ESS Legacy node class. For more information, see *mmisnodeclass* command.

### Offline upgrade assumptions (EMS or protocol nodes only):

- You assume the risks of potential quorum loss.
- The GPFS GUI and collector must be down.

**Note:**

- Before upgrading the protocol nodes, you might need to stop services on a specific protocol node before the upgrade starts. Because during a protocol node upgrade, the installation toolkit does not unmount a file system.
  - IBM Storage Fusion, IBM Spectrum Scale Container Native, and IBM Spectrum Scale CSI use the GUI rest-api server for provisioning of storage to container applications. Persistent Volume (PV) provisioning will halt when the ESS GUI is shut down and remain halted for the duration of the ESS upgrade, until the GUI is restarted. Ensure that the Red Hat OpenShift and Kubernetes administrators are aware of this impact before proceeding.
1. Complete the steps in [Chapter 3, “ESS common installation instructions,”](#) on page 19. Make sure that you add the protocol nodes to the configuration load if you are planning to upgrade protocol nodes.
  2. Update the EMS node first.

```
essrun -N ems1 update --offline
```

If kernel version changed during the update, you are prompted to exit the container, reboot, rerun the container, and rerun the update command.

```
Seems that kernel has changed. This will require a reboot
Please exit container and reboot ems1
Restart container (./essmkym1) once ems1 is back and run update again.
```

After the reboot and restarting the container, run the EMS node update again.

```
essrun -N ems1 update --offline
```

**Note:**

- You cannot upgrade a POWER8 EMS currently running ESS Legacy code (5.3.x with xCAT control) from an ESS 3000 container. If xCAT is installed on the host, you must first uninstall it and cleanup any dependencies before attempting an EMS upgrade from the container. Do not remove xCAT if legacy deployment is not needed, typically only if you are moving to ESS Legacy 6.1.0.x container. If you are still using an ESS Legacy deployment (5.3.x), update the EMS by using the upgrade instructions outlined in *ESS 5.3.x Quick Deployment Guide*.
  - When you are updating the EMS, shut down the GUI. Do not start the GUI until you finish upgrading the EMS. Because the GUI is shut down, any containers that access the ESS storage through the REST API cannot access the storage temporarily.
3. Update the protocol nodes.

```
essrun -N prt01,prt02 update --offline
```

4. Run installation check on each node type by logging in to EMS node and protocol nodes.

```
essinstallcheck
```

5. Do ESS I/O nodes offline update as follows.

**Important:**

- For doing an offline update, GPFS must be down in the ESS cluster. The GPFS status is checked. If it is up on a given node, you are asked if it is OK to shut it down.
- When you upgrade ESS 5000 nodes, you cannot upgrade the firmware because of a restriction. Add the `--no-fw-update` option to prevent firmware upgrades. For example,

```
essrun -N ess5kio1,ess5kio2 update --no-fw-update
```

Add the `--offline` option, when you attempt an offline only upgrade.

- Update by using the group of all configured ESS nodes.

```
essrun -N ess_ppc64le update --offline --no-fw-update
```

- Update by using the individual nodes.

```
essrun -N essio1,essio2 update --offline --no-fw-update
```

- Update one node at a time.

```
essrun -N essio1 update --offline --no-fw-update
```

If you want to do an online update of I/O nodes, refer to [“Update ESS I/O nodes online”](#) on page 29.

These command examples show ESS 5000 node and node classes, but you can use these commands with any of the supported ESS node types, such as ESS 3200 and ESS 3500.

After offline update is done, proceed to starting GPFS on the nodes.

6. Start GPFS on all nodes, if applicable.

```
mmstartup -N NodeList | NodeGroup
```

Wait for a few minutes and then check the state.

```
mmgetstate -N NodeList | NodeGroup
mmgetstate -s
```

**Note:** If any protocol nodes are updated, ensure that you restart CES services on those nodes.

7. Run installation check on each node from outside the container.

```
essinstallcheck
```

**Note:**

- For ESS 5000, a check is added that flags whether the WCE bit is enabled on any drive. If the WCE bit is enabled, refer the published flash for the recommended action.
- If the following warning appears in the output,

```
[WARN] mmvdisk settings do NOT match best practices. Run mmvdisk server configure
--verify --node-class <nodeclass> to debug.
```

run the following command:

```
mmvdisk server configure --update --node-class <nodeclass> --recycle one
```

## Update ESS I/O nodes online

ESS 3500 does not update the firmware automatically during the deployment. You must issue the **mmchfirmware** command to update the firmware (offline or online).

1. Update the I/O nodes online by using one of the following commands.

**Important:**

- For doing an online upgrade, recovery groups must be correctly created in both I/O nodes from the ESS cluster. Quorum is checked early in the process. If no quorum is achieved, the upgrade stops.
- When you upgrade ESS 5000 nodes, you cannot upgrade the firmware because of a restriction. Add the **--no-fw-update** option to prevent firmware upgrades. For example,

```
essrun -N ess5kio1,ess5kio2 update --no-fw-update
```

Add the **--online** option, when you attempt an online only upgrade.

- Update by using the group of all configured ESS I/O nodes.

```
essrun -N ess_ppc64le update
```

- Update by using the individual nodes.

```
essrun -N essio1,essio2 update
```

**Note:** Consider using the `--serial` option for online upgrade. This will allow you to perform an online update one node at a time (or to the required level). For example:

```
essrun -N essio1,essio2,essio3,essio4 update --serial 1
```

The `--serial 1` option is the default option, if the `--serial 1` option is not specified.

The command performs an online update of two building blocks but one node at a time. See [“Serial option for online upgrade” on page 30](#) for details.

2. Run installation check on each updated node.

```
essinstallcheck
```

**Note:** For ESS 5000, a check is added that flags whether the WCE bit is enabled on any drive. If the WCE bit is enabled, refer the published flash for the recommended action.

3. Change the **autoload** parameter to enable GPFS to automatically start on all nodes.

```
mmchconfig autoload=yes
```

## Final steps for online and offline upgrade

Do the following final steps after the online or the offline update is complete.

1. Start the performance monitoring collector on the EMS node.

```
systemctl start pmcollector
```

2. Start the performance monitoring sensors on each node.

```
mmdsh -N NodeList | NodeGroup "systemctl restart pmsensors"
```

3. Enable **gpfsGUI** start on reboot.

```
systemctl enable gpfsGUI
```

4. Run this command on the EMS node.

```
mmsql init
```

5. Start the GUI on the EMS node. **systemctl start gpfsGUI**

6. Run manual health checks.

```
gnrhealthcheck  
mmhealth node show -a  
mmnetverify -N all
```

7. Start the ESA GUI (call home), if applicable.

For POWER9 nodes, refer to [Appendix F, “Upgrading the POWER9 firmware,” on page 75](#) to update the system firmware.

## Serial option for online upgrade

A new `--serial` option is added to the **essrun** command for updates.

With the **essrun** command `--serial` option, you can specify a number or the word `all`. The specified number is the number of nodes that need to be updated at the same time. If it is an online update, the

**essrun** command iterates on the specified number of nodes until it finishes with the first set of nodes. Then, it moves to the next set and iterates over the specified number of nodes, and so on, until the specified nodes are updated.

For example, in a *NodeList* (**essrun -N *NodeList***) where the values are ['1a', '1b', '2a', '2b', '3a', '3b', '4a', '4b', '5a', '5b'] and the number specified with **--serial** is 2, the update is done in the following order:

**First round of update**

1a, 2a

**Second round of update**

3a, 4a

**Third round of update**

5a

**Fourth round of update**

1b, 2b

**Fifth round of update**

3b, 4b

**Sixth round of update**

5b

If the command is **essrun -N essio1,essio2,essio3,essio4 update --serial 1** then the result is as follows:

1. Update essio1 (canister A BB1)
2. Update essio3 (canister A BB2)
3. Update essio2 (canister B BB1)
4. Update essio4 (canister B BB2)

If the command is **essrun -N essio1,essio2,essio3,essio4 update --serial 2** then the result is as follows:

1. Update essio1 and essio3 (canister A BB1 and canister A BB2)
2. Update essio2 and essio4 (canister B BB1 and canister B BB2)



## Appendix A. ESS known issues

### Known issues in ESS

For information about ESS 5.3.7.x known issues, see *Known issues* in [ESS 5.3.7.x Quick Deployment Guide](#).

The following table describes the known issues in IBM Elastic Storage System (ESS) and how to resolve these issues.

| Issue                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Resolution or action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The POWER8 firmware level that is included in the container does not match to the level that is verified in <b>essinstallcheck</b>. <b>essinstallcheck</b> verifies whether the POWER8 firmware is updated to the latest recommended level. The following error was found:</p> <pre>ERROR] System Firmware: found FW860.B0<br/>(SV860_240) expected min FW860.B3 (SV860_245)</pre> <p>The .img file that is included in the container does not bring systems to this level. The level in the container is: 01SV860_243_165.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>ESS legacy</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Download a correct file from <a href="#">IBM Fix Central</a>.</li><li>See <a href="#">ESS upgrade instructions</a> to update the firmware to the correct level by using the downloaded package.</li></ul>                                                      |
| <p>All MD devices do not stop when the utility node is rebooted to stop them.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>IBM Storage Scale System Utility Node</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <p>Power cycle the node by using the ipmitool command.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <p>In the Hardware panel of a system using a utility-node EMS, a node might show up as Unknown.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>IBM Storage Scale System Utility Node</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <p>If this is detected, do the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Run the <b>mmsysmoncontrol restart</b> command on the nodes showing up as Unknown.</li><li>Run the <b>mmhealth node show --refresh</b> command on all nodes.</li><li>Check hardware states in the GUI.</li></ol> |
| <p>In a utility node by using Infiniband (IB) high-speed networking, the typical use of <code>essgennetworks</code> to create the network bond will fail.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>IBM Storage Scale System Utility Node</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>For IB systems you must use other means to create the network bonds on the Utility-Node EMS. The following tools will work: <code>nmtui</code>, <code>nmcli</code>.</p>                                                                                                                           |
| <p>After updating to 6.1.8.3, <b>essinstallcheck</b> may show an error saying that <b>mmvdisk</b> settings do not match to best practices.</p> <p>The following configuration parameters are set at the cluster level:</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>To resolve this issue, you need issue following command to remove these 4 configuration:</li></ol> <pre>mmchconfig<br/>nsdRAIDDiskPerformanceMinLimitPct=DELETE,nsdR<br/>AIDDi</pre>                                                                           |

| Issue                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Resolution or action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                |               |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------|----------|------|-----|-------------------------|--|--|--|---------|----------|-----------|----|-------------------------|--|--|--|---------|----------|-----------|----|-------------------------|--|--|--|---------|----------|-----------|----|-------------------------|--|--|--|---------|----------|-----------|----|-------------------------|--|--|--|---------|----------|-----------|----|-------------------------|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>nsdRAIDDiskPerformanceMinLimitPct</b></li><li>• <b>nsdRAIDDiskPerformanceUpdateInterval</b></li><li>• <b>nsdRAIDEventLogToConsole</b></li><li>• <b>nsdRAIDSSDPerformanceMinLimitPct</b></li></ul> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ESS 5000</li></ul>                                                                                                                           | <pre>skPerformanceUpdateInterval=DELETE,nsdRAIDEventLogToConsole=DELETE,nsdRAIDSSDPerformanceMinLimitPct=DELETE</pre> <p>2. Issue <b>server configure --update</b> again:</p> <pre>mmvdisk server configure --update --node-class &lt;mmvdisknode class&gt; --recycle one</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                |               |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| <p>Updating storage enclosure firmware on a daisy-chain system might fail by using the following command:</p> <pre>mmchfirmware --type storage-enclosure</pre> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ESS 3500</li><li>• ESS 5147-102 daisy-chain</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                      | <p>When updating enclosure firmware on a daisy-chained ESS 3500 with 5 or more 4U102 enclosures, you must update each enclosure individually by using the serial number instead of the normal parallel method.</p> <p>For example:</p> <p>1. Gather the enclosure serial numbers by using the following command:</p> <pre># mmlsenclosure all -N ess3500rw6a-hs</pre> <p>A sample output is as follows:</p> <table><thead><tr><th>serial number</th><th>product id</th><th>firmware level</th><th>service nodes</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>78E400Q</td><td>5141-FN2</td><td>E11Q</td><td>yes</td></tr><tr><td>ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>78T2468</td><td>5147-102</td><td>4E29,4E29</td><td>no</td></tr><tr><td>ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>78T246A</td><td>5147-102</td><td>4E2A,4E29</td><td>no</td></tr><tr><td>ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>78T246C</td><td>5147-102</td><td>4E29,4E29</td><td>no</td></tr><tr><td>ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>78T246E</td><td>5147-102</td><td>4E29,4E29</td><td>no</td></tr><tr><td>ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>78T254a</td><td>5147-102</td><td>4E29,4E29</td><td>no</td></tr><tr><td>ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table> <p>2. By using this serial number list, update each enclosure individually.</p> <pre># mmchfirmware --type storage-enclosure --serial-number &lt;serial number&gt;</pre> | serial number  | product id    | firmware level | service nodes | 78E400Q | 5141-FN2 | E11Q | yes | ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net |  |  |  | 78T2468 | 5147-102 | 4E29,4E29 | no | ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net |  |  |  | 78T246A | 5147-102 | 4E2A,4E29 | no | ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net |  |  |  | 78T246C | 5147-102 | 4E29,4E29 | no | ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net |  |  |  | 78T246E | 5147-102 | 4E29,4E29 | no | ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net |  |  |  | 78T254a | 5147-102 | 4E29,4E29 | no | ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net |  |  |  |
| serial number                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | product id                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | firmware level | service nodes |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| 78E400Q                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 5141-FN2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | E11Q           | yes           |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                |               |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| 78T2468                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 5147-102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 4E29,4E29      | no            |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                |               |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| 78T246A                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 5147-102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 4E2A,4E29      | no            |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                |               |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| 78T246C                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 5147-102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 4E29,4E29      | no            |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                |               |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| 78T246E                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 5147-102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 4E29,4E29      | no            |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                |               |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| 78T254a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 5147-102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 4E29,4E29      | no            |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| ess3500rw6a-hs.test.net                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                |               |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| <p>An error occurs during the precheck portion of an upgrade, if the ESS 3500 canister contains a mix of Micron 7300 and 7450 boot drives.</p> <pre>[ERROR] Expected quantity of NVME model: Micron_7450_MTFDKBA960TFR is 2, but only found: 1 [ERROR] Expected quantity of NVME model: Micron_7300_MTFDHBA960TDF is 2, but only found: 1</pre> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ESS 3500</li><li>• ESS 5147-102</li></ul> | <p>This is an acceptable configuration and the error can be ignored.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                |               |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |
| <p>In a Bring Your Own EMS (BYOE) environment, when you enter the container EMS value, contradictory statements are shown.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ESS 3500</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>You will be asked to enter a ‘resolvable’ container short name in the BYOE environment. However, this fails if it is resolvable in the /etc/hosts file. In the BYOE environment, you must remove the resolvable name from the /etc/hosts file or use a different</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                |               |                |               |         |          |      |     |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |         |          |           |    |                         |  |  |  |

| Issue                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Resolution or action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>name that is not resolvable for the command to complete successfully.</p> <p>An example of failure:</p> <pre> EMS hostname must be the Management network (also called Xcat). Other networks can be aliases (A) or canonical names (CNAME) on DNS and/or on hosts file. Is the current EMS FQDN tucbyoe1vm.test.net correct? (y/n):y Remember NOT to add the domain name test.net to the input <b>Please type the desired and resolvable container short hostname [changeme] : cemsbyo</b> 2023-06-14 21:23:20,845 ERROR: The container short name cemsbyo resolves to IP address 10.88.0.5 2023-06-14 21:23:20,845 ERROR: The container long name cemsbyo.test.net resolves to IP address 10.88.0.5 <b>2023-06-14 21:23:20,845 ERROR: Container name can be resolved. This is not supported in this EMS. Do not add the container to /etc/hosts nor DNS, and try again. Or use a different container name that cannot be resolved.</b></pre> |
| <p>Because of certain conditions such as after a cable failure or a storage firmware update, the ESS 3500 4U102 enclosures might show a queue_depth other than the expected queue_depth of 1.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ESS 3500</li> <li>• ESS 5147-102</li> </ul> | <p>No action is required if the queue_depth is 2 or less. However, if queue_depth is &gt; 2, the following script can be used to update the parameter properly from each I/O node that exhibits the issue:</p> <pre> #!/bin/bash # fix_queue_depth for ess4u102 lsscsi -g   awk '/5147-102/{print substr(\$7,6)}'  while read line do     echo 1 &gt; /sys/class/scsi_generic/\${line}/ device/queue_depth done exit</pre> <p>Run <b>essstoragequickcheck</b> from each I/O node to verify the results.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <p>Enablement of IPv6 for RoCE by using Service Network includes problematic entry in /etc/sysconfig/networkscripts/ifcfg-bond-bond0.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ESS 3200</li> <li>• ESS 3500</li> <li>• ESS 5147-102</li> <li>• ESS 5000</li> </ul>                 | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Create a bond by using <b>essgennetworks</b> utility.</li> <li>2. Remove the 'comment out' line from the /etc/sysconf/network-scripts/ifcfg-bond-bond0 file of the node.</li> <li>3. Run <b>nmcli con reload</b>.</li> <li>4. Run <b>nmcli con down bond-bond0; nmcli con up bond-bond0</b>.</li> <li>5. Run all other <b>essgennetworks</b> commands to enable RoCE as per procedure.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> With this workaround the last RoCE enablement command should work as designed.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre> essgennetworks -N essio51 --suffix=-ce -- interface enP48p1s0f0,enP48p1s0f1 --bond bond0 -- enableRoCE --mtu</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| Issue                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Resolution or action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <pre> 9000 [INFO] Starting network generation... [INFO] nodelist: essio51 [INFO] suffix used for network hostname:-ce [INFO] Interface(s) available on node essio51-ce [INFO] Considered interface(s) of node essio51-ce are ['enP48p1s0f0', 'enP48p1s0f1', 'bond0'] with RDMA Port ['mlx5_2', 'mlx5_3', 'mlx5_bond_0'] for this operation [INFO] Supported Mellanox RoCE card found at node essio51 [INFO] Supported version of Mellanox OFED found at node essio51-ce [INFO] Bond validation passed and found bonds bond0 has been created using same physical network adapter at node essio51-ce [INFO] Bond MTU validation passed and found bonds MTU set to 9000 at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface bond0 have the IPv4 Address assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface bond0 have the IPv6 Address assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface MTU also set to 9000 at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f0 have the IPv4 Address assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f1 have the IPv4 Address ESS3500 5147-102 ESS3200 ESS5000 Page 2 of 9 assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f0 have the IPv6 Address assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f1 have the IPv6 Address assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Enabling RDMA for Ports ['mlx5_bond_0', 'mlx5_2', 'mlx5_3'] [INFO] Enabled RDMA i.e. RoCE using bond bond0 [INFO] Enabled RDMA i.e. RoCE using interfaces enP48p1s0f0,enP48p1s0f1 [INFO] Please recycle the GPFS daemon on those nodes where RoCE has been enabled. </pre> |
| <p>During the GUI setup in a dual-EMS environment, the backup EMS is shown twice on location specification.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ESS 3200</li> <li>• ESS 3500</li> <li>• ESS 5147-102</li> <li>• ESS 5000</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During GUI wizard setup or during GUI edit components, you will be prompted twice for specifying rack location of the backup EMS. Do the following steps to resolve this issue: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. During the first prompt for the rack location of the management servers, leave the location as black for the backup EMS.</li> </ol> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

| Issue                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Resolution or action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Click <b>Next</b> to go to the panel specifying the location for other nodes and choose the rack location for the backup EMS in this panel.</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During the GUI wizard setup or during GUI edit components, when actions are run via the GUI after users specify the rack locations, the GUI action could fail due to the backup EMS being added twice into the component database. Do the following steps to resolve this issue: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ignore the error and select click <b>Close</b> button to close the window.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Finish</b> to continue.</li> </ol> </li> </ul> |
| <p>The <b>mmhealth</b> command does not report failed cable (cable missing) between ESS 3500 HBA and 5147-102 IOM.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ESS 3500</li> <li>• ESS 5147-102</li> </ul>             | <p>If SAS cable is pulled between HBA adapter and IOM of enclosure, the <b>mmhealth node show</b> command will not flag any error. Do the following steps to resolve this issue:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Monitor the <code>mmfs.log.latest</code> file.</li> <li>2. If any suspicious errors are printed to indicating disk paths and/or IOM are missed, then run <b>mmgetpdisktopology</b> and pass the output to <code>topsummary</code> to find out which path(s) are missed.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <p>During Dual EMS GUI setup, the backup EMS is no longer shown in the hardware panel.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ESS 3200</li> <li>• ESS 3500</li> <li>• ESS 5147-102</li> <li>• ESS 5000</li> </ul> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Run the <b>mm1scomp</b> command from EMS to find the component ID for the backup EMS.</li> <li>2. Run the <b>mmdelcomp &lt;component_id&gt;</b> command (component_id is the component ID obtained from above step 1.)</li> <li>3. Return to the <b>GUI Hardware</b> panel and click <b>Edit Rack Components</b>, which is on left-top of the server list on the right side.</li> <li>4. Choose <b>Yes, discover new servers and enclosures first</b>. This takes many minutes.</li> <li>5. Click <b>Next</b> to follow the screen prompt to complete Hardware Components setup.</li> </ol>                                                                               |
| <p>Call home deployment will fail if <code>gpfsadmin</code> username is created/exists as part of SUDO enablement before the call home deployment.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ESS 5000</li> </ul>     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If SUDO is already configured before deploying <code>esscallhomeconf</code>, then the workaround is to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Disable SUDO (in relevant nodes where it is enabled).</li> <li>2. Deploy configuration of Callhome (in a default root mode).</li> </ol> </li> <li>• If SUDO is not enabled yet, then the recommendation is to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deploy Callhome first (Can be achieved through GUI setup or manually via <code>esscallhomeconf</code>. For more information, see ESS documentation.</li> <li>2. Enable SUDO on the cluster node(s).</li> </ol> </li> </ul>                                      |

| Issue                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Resolution or action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>For RoCE enablement, the bond interface creation may have problematic entry in /etc/sysconf/networkscripts/ifcfg-bond-bond0. The identified parameter is: <b>IPV6_ADDR_GEN_MODE</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESS 5000</li> </ul> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Create bond using essgennetworks utility.</li> <li>2. Remove the 'comment out' line in the /etc/sysconf/network-scripts/ifcfg-bond-bond0 file of the specific node.</li> <li>3. Run <b>nmcli con reload</b>.</li> <li>4. Run <b>nmcli con down bond-bond0; nmcli con up bondbond0</b>.</li> <li>5. Run all other essgennetworks commands to enable RoCE as per procedure.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> With this workaround the last RoCE enablement command should work as designed.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre> essgennetworks -N essio51 --suffix=-ce -- interface enP48p1s0f0,enP48p1s0f1 --bond bond0 -- enableRoCE --mtu 9000 [INFO] Starting network generation... [INFO] nodelist: essio51 [INFO] suffix used for network hostname:-ce [INFO] Interface(s) available on node essio51-ce [INFO] Considered interface(s) of node essio51-ce are ['enP48p1s0f0', 'enP48p1s0f1', 'bond0'] with RDMA Port ['mlx5_2', 'mlx5_3', 'mlx5_bond_0'] for this operation [INFO] Supported Mellanox RoCE card found at node essio51 [INFO] Supported version of Mellanox OFED found at node essio51-ce [INFO] Bond validation passed and found bonds bond0 has been created using same physical network adapter at node essio51-ce [INFO] Bond MTU validation passed and found bonds MTU set to 9000 at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface bond0 have the IPv4 Address assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface bond0 have the IPv6 Address assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface MTU also set to 9000 at node essio51- ce [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f0 have the IPv4 Address assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f1 have the IPv4 Address assigned at node essio51-ce ESS5000 Page 5 of 9 [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f0 have the IPv6 Address assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f1 have the IPv6 Address assigned at node essio51-ce [INFO] Enabling RDMA for Ports ['mlx5_bond_0', 'mlx5_2','mlx5_3'] [INFO] Enabled RDMA i.e. RoCE using bond </pre> |

| Issue                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Resolution or action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <pre>bond0 [INFO] Enabled RDMA i.e. RoCE using interfaces enP48p1s0f0,enP48p1s0f1 [INFO] Please recycle the GPFS daemon on those nodes where RoCE has been enabled.</pre>                                                                                                            |
| <p>The <b>mmvdisk sed enroll</b> command might proceed when it is issued after creating user vdisk sets instead of blocking it.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESS 3500</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Issue the <b>mmvdisk sed enroll</b> command after creating a recovery group and before creating user vdisk sets.</li> <li>Contact IBM Support, if you issued the <b>mmvdisk sed enroll</b> command after creating user vdisk sets.</li> </ul> |
| <p>Occasionally, some drive paths on a few drives in an ESS 3500 enclosure were found missing, when the <b>essfindmissingdisks</b> command was issued.</p> <pre># essfindmissingdisks [INFO] Start find missing disk paths [INFO] nodelist: localhost [INFO] May take long time to complete search of all drive paths [INFO] Checking node: localhost [INFO] Checking missing disk paths from node localhost [INFO] GNR server: name ess3500a-hs.test.net arch x86_64 model ESS3500-5141-FN2 serial 78E400XA [INFO] Enclosure 78E40XA sees 22 disks (22 SSDs, 0 HDDs) [INFO] Enclosure 78T254A sees 102 disks (0 SSDs, 102 HDDs) [INFO] Enclosure 78T246A sees 102 disks (0 SSDs, 102 HDDs) [ERROR] GNR server disk topology: ESS 3500 H2 (2 HBA 24 NVMe 2 Full 4U102) (match: 96/100) [INFO] GNR configuration: 3 enclosures, 22 SSDs, 2 empty slots, 220 disks total, 0 NVRAM partitions [ERROR] Location 78E40XA-1 appears empty but should have an SSD [ERROR] Location 78E40XA-2 appears empty but should have an SSD [[ERROR] essfindmissingdisks detected error in system. Please review output carefully. [root@ess3500a ~]#</pre> <p>This error indicates that one path to the drive might be in a 'stuck-state' condition whereas other path is healthy.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESS 3200</li> <li>ESS 3500</li> </ul> | <p>Run the following script from the primary canister:</p> <pre>root@ess3500a ~]# /opt/ibm/ess/tools/samples/ fix_stuck_drive_slots.sh</pre>                                                                                                                                         |
| <p>The ESS system reboots unexpected because mpt3sas messages fill logs.</p> <p>The following error appears:</p> <pre>System crashed with 'swiotlb buffer is full' then 'scsi_dma_map failed' errors</pre> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESS 3500</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>To resolve this error, go to the <a href="#">Red Hat known issues</a>. .44 mpt3sas driver will be available in ESS 6.1.8.</p>                                                                                                                                                     |

| Issue                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Resolution or action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Customer may encounter false positive intermittent fan module failures in /var/log/messages. It is also possible that a call home will be generated for each fan module.</p> <p>Errors typically seen:</p> <pre>mmsysmon[7819]: [W] Event raised: Fan fan_module1_id4 has a fault. mmsysmon[7819]: [W] Event raised: Fan fan_module1_id4 state is FAILED.</pre> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESS 3500</li> </ul>                                                                                                                      | <p>If this is seen contact IBM support to verify false positive condition.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <p>Running <b>essrun ONLINE update</b> might fail on the <b>mmchfirmware -N localhost --type drive</b> section.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESS 5000</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <p>Manually issue the <b>mmchfirmware</b> after the deployment.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <p>In ESS 5000, if using Y-Type cables (used in HDR switches), for running high-speed network, the <b>mmhealth node show -N ioNode1-ib,ioNode2-ib NETWORK</b> might show <b>ib_rdma_port_width_low(mlx5_0/1, mlx5_1/1, mlx5_4/1)</b>.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESS 5000</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check existing anomaly in HDR-Y cables.</li> <li>2. Contact IBM Support for help to update /usr/lpp/mmfs /lib/mmsysmon/ NetworkService.py and /usr/lpp/mmfs/lib/mmsysmon/network.json with appropriate code.</li> <li>3. After patching, restart <b>mmsysmon</b> to apply changes. Example: <b>systemctl restart mmsysmon</b>.</li> <li>4. Issue the <b>mmhealth</b> command to verify whether the condition is alleviated.</li> </ol> |
| <p>When EMS is updated from previous releases to ESS 6.1.5.0, setting up SELinux on EMS by issuing the <b>essrun selinux enable</b> command in a container fails. The following error appears:</p> <pre>Failed to resolve typeattributeset statement at /var/lib/selinux/targeted/tmp/modules/400/ pcpupstream/cil:42 The issue may be related to a bug in Red Hat kernel 8.6</pre> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESS legacy</li> <li>ESS 3000</li> <li>ESS 5000</li> <li>ESS 3200</li> <li>ESS 3500</li> <li>ESS 3500 (4u102)</li> </ul> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reboot EMS.</li> <li>2. Restart the container.</li> <li>3. Ensure that selinux-policy is up-to-date by issuing the <b>yum update selinux-policy</b> command.</li> <li>4. Reinstall pcp-selinux by issuing the <b>yum reinstall pcp-selinux</b> command.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <p>When creating additional file systems in a tiered storage environment you might encounter a MIGRATION callback error.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Delete the callback and create the file system again.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

| Issue                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Resolution or action |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <div>mmaddcallback: Callback identifier "MIGRATION" already exists or was specified multiple times.</div> <p>If a callback exists, file system creation will fail.</p> <p><b>Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ESS 3000</li> <li>• ESS 3200</li> <li>• ESS 5000</li> <li>• ESS 3500</li> <li>• ESS 3500 (4u102)</li> </ul> |                      |



## Appendix B. Adding additional nodes or building block(s)

The following example procedure describes how to add IBM Elastic Storage System nodes to an existing IBM Elastic Storage System environment thus extending the existing file system.

The example is based on the following assumptions:

- POWER9 EMS and one or more IBM Elastic Storage System nodes in the cluster (three node quorum or more)
- Adding an IBM Elastic Storage System server (two canisters) without code upgrade in the existing EMS
- 4M block size, 8+2p raid code, 80% set-size (defaults)

Refer to the following steps to add new IBM Elastic Storage System nodes to an existing cluster. If needed, refer to the preceding sections for the details of the following steps.

1. Add a new building block or nodes and I/O node names to existing EMS /etc/hosts including management and high-speed connection.
2. Reinstall the deployed code image if it is not in EMS and run the container clean to bring the new /etc/hosts in the container.

```
# essrun -N ems,essio1,essio2,essio3,essio4 config load -p
```

3. Run update --precheck.

```
# essrun -N ems,essio1,essio2,essio3,essio4 update --precheck
```

4. Create network bond connections for the new nodes.

```
# essrun -N essio3,essio4 network --suffix=-hs
```

5. Outside the container, run the **essnettest** command against the new nodes.

Run this command from one of the nodes in the cluster and use this command to test the health of the high-speed network connections. For more information, see the **essnettest** command help.

6. Add new nodes to the existing cluster by submitting the following command from the container:

```
# essrun -N ems cluster --add-nodes essio3,essio4 --suffix=-hs
```

**Note:** Add only the same nodetype building blocks at a time. For example:

```
# essrun -N ems1 cluster --suffix=-hs --add-nodes ess3k1a,ess3k1b
```

Do not add node type building blocks as follows:

```
# essrun -N ems1 cluster --suffix=-hs --add-nodes ess3k1a,ess3k1b,ess5k1a,ess5k1b
```

7. Create node class and recovery groups by submitting the following command from the container:

```
# essrun -N essio3,essio4 filesystem --rg-only --suffix=-hs
```

8. Get the list of recovery groups by submitting the following command outside the container:

```
mmvdisk rg list
```

9. Define the vdisk set.

**Note:** For ESS 3500, you must keep 1.5 TB or more space free if future capacity MES is planned (performance to hybrid). Thus, it is recommended to not use all available space when you create a file

system for the performance model. The default allocation is 80% of available space when you use the **essrun filesystem** command (for x86 nodes).

- a. Use the **ssh** command to connect to one of the new nodes.
- b. Define the vdisk set by submitting the following command:

```
mmvdisk vs define --vs vs_fs1_essio3_hs_essio4_hs --rg ess3500_essio3_hs_essio4_hs  
--code 8+2p --bs 4M --ss 80% --nsd-usage dataAndMetadata --sp system
```

**Note:** Assume that the existing file system has the attributes that are mentioned in the command. For vdisk set name, use a unique name similar to the existing IBM Elastic Storage System vdisk set.

For more information, see [mmvdisk](#) online command reference.

10. Add the vdisk set to an existing file system by submitting the following command:

```
mmvdisk fs add --file-system fs1 --vdisk-set vs_fs1_essio3_hs_essio4_hs
```

**Note:** Assume that the original file system name is *fs1*.

11. Update the component database on the EMS by submitting the following command from outside of the container:

```
mmaddcompspec default --replace
```

12. Restripe the file system by submitting the following command:

```
mmrestripefs fs1 -b
```

13. Add new nodes to GUI monitoring.

```
mmchnode --perfmon -N essio5-hs,essio6-hs
```

## Adding nodes to GUI

1. From the container, issue the following command to configure and start the performance monitoring sensors.

```
cd /home/deploy/ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dme_ppc64le.dir  
./essmkym1  
essrun -N essio3,essio4 gui --add-to-hosts
```

**Note:** Ensure that the passwordless ssh is configured from new nodes to EMS.

2. Check whether GUI web page shows new ESS nodes.

Proceed to add the new nodes as sensors, re-configure call home, and rerun the GUI wizard to identify the new nodes.

## Real-world ESS building block addition notes

These notes are the raw instructions that came from a recent IBM Elastic Storage System building-block add operation. It is important to add this information for users who need additional help/context.

Assumptions/examples:

- *essio3* and *essio4* are the new nodes being added (*essio3-hs*, *essio4-hs*).
- *cems0* is the container name.
- *essio1* is a node already in the cluster.
- *fs1* is the existing filesystem name.

To add new canisters to an existing cluster, refer to the following steps.

1. Add new IBM Elastic Storage System nodes, including management and high-speed connections to `/etc/hosts` on the EMS node.
2. Reinstall the image and run the container clean to bring the new `/etc/hosts` inside the container. Only need to reinstall/install a new image if the version on the new nodes is down-level.
3. Run config load against the existing nodes and the new nodes. Then do an offline update of both new canisters by using the following command:

```
essrun -N essio3,essio4 update --offline
```

4. To create network bond connections for the new nodes, issue the following command:

```
essrun -N essio3,essio4 network --suffix=-hs
```

5. Run **essnettest** against the new nodes, **ssh** to *essio3* and run the following command:

```
ESSENV=TEST essnettest -N essio3,essio4 --suffix=-hs
```

Run this command from one of the nodes in the cluster and use this command to test the health of the high-speed network connections. For more information, see the **essnettest** command help.

6. Add new nodes to the existing cluster by submitting the following command from the container:

```
root@cems0:/ # essrun -N essio1 cluster --add-nodes essio3,essio4 --suffix=-hs
```

**Note:** The *essio1* node is an existing node in the cluster.

7. Create node class and recovery groups by submitting the following command from the container:

```
root@cems0:/ # essrun -N essio3,essio4 filesystem --rg-only --suffix=-hs
```

8. Get the list of recovery groups by submitting the following command (from one of the new nodes (i.e. *essio3*):

```
mmvdisk rg list
```

9. Define the vdisk set.

- a) Use the **ssh** command to connect to one of the new nodes.

```
cd /home/deploy/ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le.dir  
./essmkym1  
essrun -N essio3,essio4 gui --add-to-hosts
```

**Note:** Ensure that the passwordless ssh is configured from new nodes to EMS.

**Note:** Assume that the existing file system has the attributes that are mentioned in the command.

For vdisk set name, use a unique name similar to the existing IBM Elastic Storage System vdisk set. Verify existing disk set names by listing vdisk sets.

```
mmvdisk vs list --vs all
```

- b) Define the vdisk set by submitting the following command (it is an example and may vary in different environment):

For more information, see [mmvdisk online command reference](#).

10. Create the vdisk set by submitting the following command:

```
mmvdisk vs create --vs vs_fs2
```

11. Add the vdisk set to an existing file system by submitting the following command:

```
mmvdisk fs add --file-system fs1 --vdisk-set vs_fs2
```

**Note:** Assume that the original file system name is *fs1*.

12. Update the component database on the EMS by submitting the following command from outside of the container:

```
mmaddcompspec default --replace
```

13. Restripe the file system by submitting the following command:

```
cd /home/deploy/ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le.dir  
./essmkym1  
essrun -N essio3,essio4 gui --add-to-hosts
```

**Note:** Ensure that the passwordless ssh is configured from new nodes to EMS.

After you complete the procedure, do the following steps:

1. Reconfigure call home, for more information, see [Configuring call home](#).
2. Rerun the GUI wizard to identify the new nodes.

From a web browser, login to the EMS over the management network and select **Edit Rack Components** to rerun the wizard discovery.

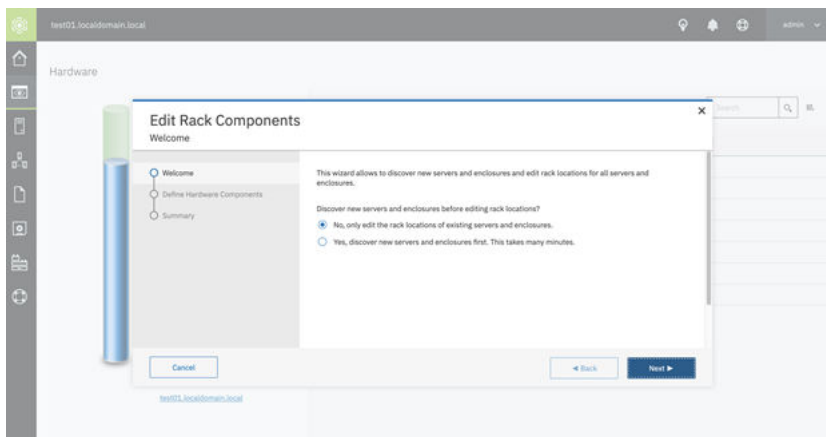


Figure 5. Showing ESS GUI wizard

## Appendix C. Configuring call home in ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS 3500, and ESS Legacy

In ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS Legacy systems, ESS version 6.1.1.x can generate call home events when a drive in an attached enclosure needs to be replaced. ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS Legacy can also generate call home events for other hardware-related events in the I/O server nodes, protocol nodes, and client nodes that need service.

ESS 5000 and ESS Legacy hardware events rely on POWER system OPAL logs. ESS 3000 and ESS 3200 hardware events rely on **mmcallhome** and **mmhealth** commands.

ESS version 6.1.x automatically opens an IBM Service Request with service data, such as the location and field replaceable unit (FRU) number to carry out the service task.

### Disk call home for ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS 3500, and ESS Legacy

The IBM Spectrum Scale RAID pdisk is an abstraction of a physical disk. A pdisk corresponds to exactly one physical disk, and belongs to exactly one de-clustered array within exactly one recovery group.

Any pdisk that is in the

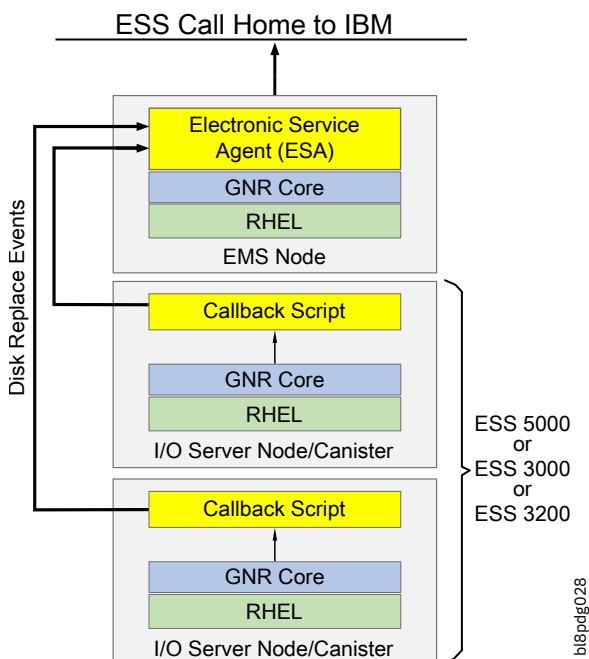


Figure 6. ESS Call Home Block Diagram

From ESS 3500, the unified call home is used to create service requests. Although ESA is deprecated and will be removed, it is supported as a backup for the next releases.

If a cluster has ESS 3500 nodes, EMS nodes, and at least one ESS 3500 node, the unified call home is used to create service tickets. For older nodes without any ESS 3500 nodes, ESA is used to create service tickets.

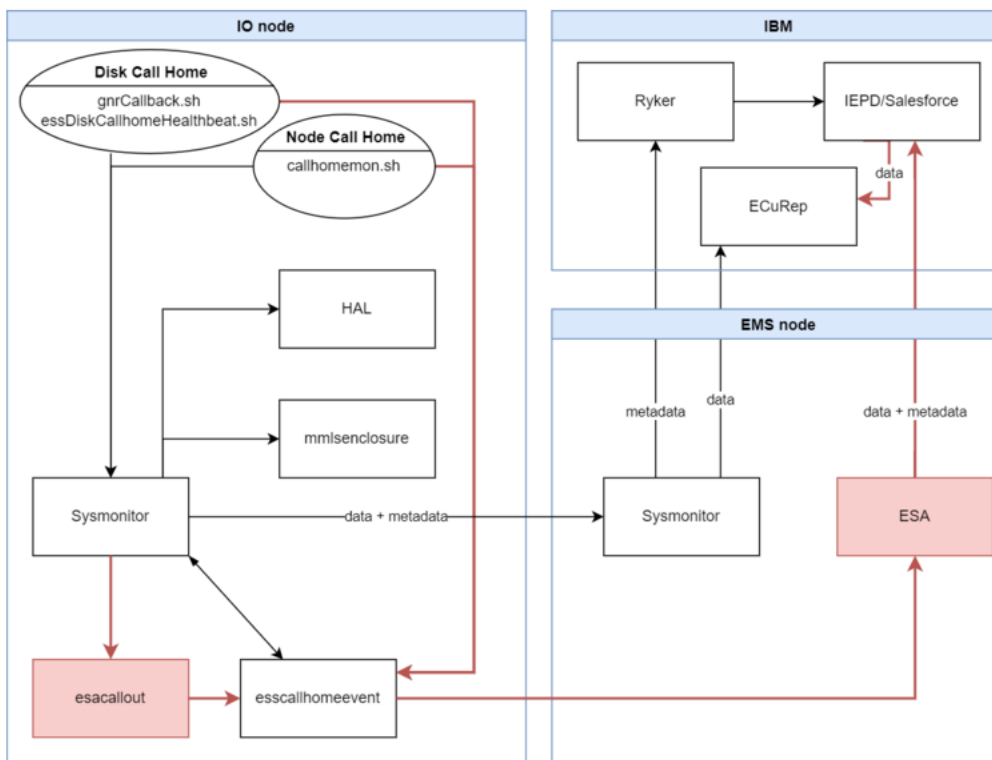


Figure 7. ESS unified call home

The attributes of a pdisk includes the following:

- The state of the pdisk
- The disk's unique worldwide name (WWN)
- The disk's field replaceable unit (FRU) code
- The disk's physical location code

## Installing the IBM Electronic Service Agent

IBM Electronic Service Agent (ESA) for PowerLinux version 4.5.5.1 or later can monitor the ESS systems. ESA is pre-installed on the EMS node when the EMS node is shipped.

The `esagent rpm` is also provided in the ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS Legacy binaries.iso file in the container package. The ISO is mounted when **essmgr** is run to start the container. When mounted, the rpm file can be found at the following location:

- ESS 5000, ESS 3000, and ESS 3200: `/install/ess/otherpkgs/rhels8/ppc64le/ess/`
- ESS Legacy: `/install/ess/otherpkgs/rhels7/ppc64le/ess/`

1. Verify if `esagent RPM` is already installed on EMS by issuing the following command:

```
# rpm -qa | grep esagent
```

A sample output is as follows:

```
yum install esagent.pLinux-4.5.7-0.noarch.rpm
```

2. If it is not installed, issue the following command:

```
# cd /install/ess/otherpkgs/rhels8/ppc64le/ess/  
# yum install esagent.pLinux-4.5.7-0.noarch.rpm
```

## Configuring call home on ESS systems

To configure call home on ESS systems, the first step is to activate and configure Electronic Service Agent (ESA).

After ESA is configured with the customer details, ESS systems can be configured for call home event generation by using the Electronic Service Agent (ESA). This is done by using the **esscallhomeconf** command.

**Note:** ESA is not activated by default. When you run **esscallhomeconf** for the first time, before the activation of ESA, you will get a message such as the following message:

```
[root@ems1 tmp]# esscallhomeconf -E ems1 -show  
[E] IBM Electronic Service Agent (ESA) is not activated.  
[I] Activate ESA by running: /opt/ibm/esa/bin/activator -C.  
[I] Alternatively use --esa-config switch and provide all customer details to do ESA activation from here only.  
[I] See --esa-config switch for further CLI activation of ESA  
Exiting...
```

After ESA is successfully configured, you need to configure ESS systems to generate call home events.

Entities or systems that can generate events are called endpoints. The EMS, I/O server nodes, and attached enclosures can be endpoints in ESS. Servers and enclosure endpoints can generate events. Server can generate hardware events which could be CPU, DIMM, OS Disk, etc. Typically, these events are also logged in the OPAL log.

In ESS, ESA is only installed on the EMS node, and it automatically discovers the EMS as PrimarySystem. The EMS node and I/O server nodes must be registered to ESA as endpoints.

The **esscallhomeconf** command is used to perform the registration task. The command also registers enclosures attached to the I/O servers by default.

Software call home can also be registered based on the customer information given while configuring the ESA agent. A software call home group `auto` is configured by default and the EMS node acts as the software call home server. The weekly and daily software call home data collection configuration is also activated by default. The software call home uses the ESA network connection settings to upload the data to IBM. The ESA agent network setup must be complete and working for the software call home to work.

Activate and configure ESA and then configure call home as follows.

## Configuration of ESA or unified call home

You can configure ESA or unified call home by using the following **esscallhomeconf** command. For more information, see [ESS CLI \*\*esscallhomeconf\*\*](#).

### Configuration of ESA using **esscallhomeconf**

The **esscallhomeconf** command has a switch called **--esa-config**. With the introduction of **--esa-config**, ESA configuration can be done by using the CLI. The **esscallhomeconf** command used with the **--esa-config** switch not only activates and configures ESA with the required customer information, but it also configures ESS systems to generate call home events. This command requires customer information such as customer name, email ID, server location, etc.

The usage information of **esscallhomeconf** is as follows.

```
usage: esscallhomeconf [ -h | --help ] -E ESA-AGENT [ --prefix PREFIX ] [ --suffix SUFFIX ] {
    [--verbose ] [ --esa-hostname-fqdn ESA_HOSTNAME_FQDN ]
    [--stop-auto-event-report] [ -N NODE-LIST ] [ --show ]
    [--register {node,all} ] [ --icn ICN ]
    [--serial SOLN-SERIAL ] [ --model SOLN-MODEL ]
    [--proxy-ip PROXY-HOSTNAME ] [ --proxy-port PROXY-PORT ]
    [--proxy-userid PROXY-USERNAME ] [ --proxy-password PROXY-PASSWORD ]
    [--esa-config] [-m CUSTOMER_INFO_M]
    [-u CUSTOMER_INFO_U] [-n CUSTOMER_INFO_N]
    [-e CUSTOMER_INFO_E] [-t CUSTOMER_INFO_T]
    [-f CUSTOMER_INFO_F] [-j CUSTOMER_INFO_J]
    [-k CUSTOMER_INFO_K] [-g CUSTOMER_INFO_G]
    [-a CUSTOMER_INFO_A] [-z CUSTOMER_INFO_Z]
    [-y CUSTOMER_INFO_Y] [-r CUSTOMER_INFO_R]
    [-b CUSTOMER_INFO_B] [-s CUSTOMER_INFO_S]
    [-i CUSTOMER_INFO_I] [-p CUSTOMER_INFO_P]
    [-w] [-Y]
```

#### optional arguments:

|                                       |                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -h, --help                            | show this help message and exit                                                                   |
| -E ESA-AGENT                          | Provide nodename for esa agent node                                                               |
| --prefix PREFIX                       | Provide hostname prefix. Use = between --prefix and value if the value starts with -.             |
| --suffix SUFFIX                       | Provide hostname suffix. Use = between --suffix and value if the value starts with -.             |
| --verbose                             | Provide verbose output                                                                            |
| --esa-hostname-fqdn ESA_HOSTNAME_FQDN | Fully qualified domain name of ESA server for certificate validation.                             |
| --stop-auto-event-report              | Stop report of automatic event to ESA in case of any hardware call home event reported to system. |
| -N NODE-LIST                          | Provide a list of nodes to configure.                                                             |
| --show                                | Show call home configuration details.                                                             |
| --register {node,all}                 | Register endpoints(nodes, enclosure or all) with ESA.                                             |
| --icn ICN                             | Provide IBM Customer Number for Software callhome.                                                |
| --serial SOLN-SERIAL                  | Provide ESS solution serial number.                                                               |
| --model SOLN-MODEL                    | Provide ESS model. Applicable only for BE (ppc64) models.                                         |
| --proxy-ip PROXY-HOSTNAME             | Provides the IP address or the hostname for the proxy configuration.                              |
| --proxy-port PROXY-PORT               | Provides the port number for the proxy configuration.                                             |
| --proxy-userid PROXY-USERNAME         | Provides the user ID for the proxy configuration.                                                 |
| --proxy-password PROXY-PASSWORD       | Provides the password for the proxy configuration.                                                |
| --esa-config                          | Provide info for configuration of ESA via CLI.                                                    |
| -m ESA_CONFIG_M                       | name of organization that owns or is responsible for this system                                  |
| -u ESA_CONFIG_U                       | country or region where the system is located                                                     |
| -n ESA_CONFIG_N                       | name of the primary person in your organization who is responsible for this system                |
| -e ESA_CONFIG_E                       | email address for the primary contact person (e.g. myuserid@mycompany.com)                        |
| -t ESA_CONFIG_T                       | telephone number where the primary contact person can be reached                                  |
| -f ESA_CONFIG_F                       | secondary person in your organization who is responsible for this system                          |
| -j ESA_CONFIG_J                       | secondary person email address (e.g.                                                              |

```

-k ESA_CONFIG_K      myuserid@mycompany.com)
                      secondary person telephone number where the person can
                      be reached
-g ESA_CONFIG_G      country or region of the contact person
-a ESA_CONFIG_A      state or province where the system is located
-z ESA_CONFIG_Z      postal code where the system is located
-y ESA_CONFIG_Y      city where the system is located
-r ESA_CONFIG_R      address where the system is located
-b ESA_CONFIG_B      building where the system is located
-s ESA_CONFIG_S      telephone number where the system is located
-i ESA_CONFIG_I      IBM ID
-p ESA_CONFIG_P      port number on which the subsystem listens for
                      incoming client requests. Default: 5024
-w                   Add firewall rules to access ESA UI from remote
                      systems. Default: True
-Y                   accept license agreement without displaying it.
                      Default: False

```

There are several switches which start with `ESA_CONFIG` that can be used with the `--esa-config` switch of the **esscallhomeconf** command to activate ESA by using the CLI.



**Attention:** You can configure software call home without running the **esscallhomeconf** command on the ESS system by using the **mmcallhome** command. However, it is recommended to not enable software call home with **mmcallhome**. Instead, use the **esscallhomeconf** command for this purpose on ESS systems including ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS 5000, and ESS Legacy 5.x systems.

ESS 3500 installation, the GUI setup runs the **esscallhomeconf** command, and the ESA and the unified call home are configured. To ensure the ESA and the unified call home are configured and support earlier ESS versions, reconfigure the call home by using the **esscallhomeconf** command (and not the ESA Web User Interface).

An example command output is as follows.

```

# /opt/ibm/ess/tools/bin/esscallhomeconf -E essem1 -N essem1,essio1,essio2 \
--esa-config --register all --icn 123456789 \
-m IBM -n "Jane Doe" -e janedoe@example.com \
-t 5121234567 -g "United States" -s 5121234567
-u "United States" -r "11400 Burnet Rd" \
-y Austin -a TX -z 78758 -b 045 -f "Pablo Marquez" \
-j pablom1@us.ibm.com -k 5121234567 \
-Y -i lopezro@us.ibm.com --crvpd \
--serial 212867A --model 8247-21L\

[I] ESA is activated but the configuration was not done.
[I] Activating ESA via CLI using information provided by --esa-config switch
[I] Successfully activated the ESA with customer detail...
2021-02-18T09:41:18.190176 Generating node list...
2021-02-18T09:41:35.966228 nodelist: essem1 essio1 essio2
Existing vpd file found. --crvpd option is ignored.
End point essem1 registered successfully with systemid 1dab83cc3b9409d5bbf6e657c7e312c8
End point essio1 registered successfully with systemid f7e01a43e9a7464da6cfbe757ca9a669
End point essio2 registered successfully with systemid 1438fddb414738cf60dcade90570059
Skipping node essem1 as it's not an IO node. Only IO nodes are attached to enclosures. Thus
only IO nodes are eligible to be registered their enclosures here.
End point enclosure G51704M registered successfully with systemid
e2b14722f6940b1c410c6ec4452ded9d
End point enclosure G517022 registered successfully with systemid
506794d52b9fd5f7c580ca8e48a051cc
ESA configuration for ESS Call home is complete.
Started configuring software callhome
Checking for ESA is activated or not before continuing.
Fetching customer detail from ESA.
Customer detail has been successfully fetched from ESA.
Setting software callhome customer detail.
Successfully set the customer detail for software callhome.
Enabled daily schedule for software callhome.
Enabled weekly schedule for software callhome.
Direct connection will be used for software calhome.
Successfully set the direct connection settings for software callhome.
Enabled software callhome capability.
Creating callhome automatic group
Created auto group for software call home and enabled it.
Software callhome configuration completed.

```

This example shows that ESA is activated and configured, and nodes including enclosures as part of single command line argument are registered. Software call home is set up using the same command line.

```
# esscallhomeconf -E essems1 --show

System id and system name from ESA agent
{
  "506794d52b9fd5f7c580ca8e48a051cc": "G517022",
  "e2b14722f6940b1c410c6ec4452ded9d": "G51704M",
  "1dab83cc3b9409d5bbf6e657c7e312c8": "essems1",
  "f7e01a43e9a7464da6cfbe757ca9a669": "essio1",
  "1438fddb414738cf60dcade90570059": "essio2"
}
```

If for some reason configuration of ESA is successful but configuration of call home fails, it can be done separately by using the **esscallhomeconf** command.

**Examples of successful output of test call home connectivity (essinstallcheck) from the ESA web user interface for ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS Legacy (not ESS 3500):**

IBM Electronic Service Agent

Welcome root

Dashboard All Systems Connectivity Settings Problems

Test problem was successfully sent!

Refresh Problems Delete Details

| Name    | Description                                                               | SRC      | Time of Occurrence           | Service Request         | Service Request Status | Local Problem Status |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| OOE5006 | Event with id 1[4] occurred for source OOE5006:canisterBoot%20drives      | CAN00001 | Mon May 17 10:38:36 CDT 2021 | ER2202105171538377 4351 |                        | Detected             |
| OOE5006 | Event with id 1[4] occurred for source OOE5006:enclosure%5Fba%5F%40       | CAN00001 | Sun May 16 17:06:51 CDT 2021 | TS003633626             | Open                   | Open                 |
| OOE5006 | Event with id 1[4] occurred for source OOE5006:canisterCanister%20AB out2 | CAN00001 | Tue May 18 12:31:21 CDT 2021 | ER1202105181731231 5598 |                        | Detected             |

1 - 10 of 13 items

Send Test Problem

IBM Electronic Service Agent

Welcome root

Dashboard All Problems

Refresh Problems Delete Details

| Name    | Description                                                                  | SRC      | Time of Occurrence           | Service Request         | Service Request Status | Local Problem Status |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| OOE5006 | Event with id 1[4] occurred for source OOE5006:enclosure%5Fba%5F%40          | CAN00001 | Sun May 16 17:06:51 CDT 2021 | TS003633626             | Open                   | Open                 |
| OOE5006 | Event with id 1[4] occurred for source OOE5006:enclosure%5Fba%5Fright %5Fad1 | CAN00001 | Mon May 17 10:22:09 CDT 2021 | TS003634388             | Open                   | Open                 |
| OOE5006 | Event with id 1[4] occurred for source OOE5006:canisterBoot%20drives         | CAN00001 | Mon May 17 10:38:36 CDT 2021 | ER2202105171538377 4351 |                        | Detected             |

1 - 10 of 12 items

## Configuring proxy for call home

You can configure proxy for call home events by providing the proxy related parameters during configuration of call home. You can also set it after configuring ESA or unified call home.

The following switches are required for setting up proxy for call home.

```
--proxy-ip PROXY-IP-HOSTNAME
    Provide hostname or IP for proxy
    configuration.
--proxy-port PROXY-PORT
    Provide port number for proxy
    configuration.
--proxy-userid PROXY-USERNAME
    Provide userid for proxy configuration.
```

```
--proxy-password PROXY-PASSWORD
Provide password for proxy
```

Proxy configuration requires ESA or unified call home to be configured otherwise it will fail.

This is an example of configuring proxy along with the configuration inf ESA for call home events.

```
# /opt/ibm/ess/tools/bin/esscallhomeconf -N essems1,essio2 -E essems1
--register all --stop-auto-event-report --verify-esa-cert no --proxy host.example.com
-port 5028 -userid johndoe -password secret -m IBM -n "Jane Doe" -e janedoe@example.com
-t 5121234567 -g "United States" -s 5121234567 -u "United States" -r "11400 Burnet Rd"
-y Austin -a TX -z 78758 -b 045 -f "Pablo Marquez" -j pablom1@us.ibm.com -k 5121234567
-p 5024 -w -Y -i lopezro@us.ibm.com --esa-config --icn 123456789

[I] ESA is activated but the configuration was not done. >>>> ESA was activated.
[I] Activating ESA via CLI using information provided by --esa-config switch
[I] Successfully activated the ESA with customer detail...
[I] Successfully setup Proxy >>> proxy set successfully.
[E] Unable to change the setting to stop automatic reporting of hardware event to ESA.
```

```
# /opt/ibm/esa/bin/esacli connectionSettings --display
Connectivity
  Connection Number      1
  Type                   Direct connect
  Proxy IP address or host name
  Proxy port             0
  Destination user name

  Connection Number      2
  Type                   Proxy
  Proxy IP address or host name host.example.com
  Proxy port             5028
  Destination user name  johndoe
```

This is an example of configuring proxy after the successful configuration of ESA or unified call home for call home events.

```
# /opt/ibm/ess/tools/bin/esscallhomeconf -N essems1,essio2 -E essems1 --register all
--stop-auto-event-report --verify-esa-cert no --proxy host.example.com -port 5028 -userid
johndoe -password secret
[I] Successfully setup Proxy
[root@essems1 bin]# /opt/ibm/esa/bin/esacli connectionSettings --display
Connectivity
  Connection Number      1
  Type                   Direct connect
  Proxy IP address or host name
  Proxy port             0
  Destination user name

  Connection Number      2
  Type                   Proxy
  Proxy IP address or host name host.example.com
  Proxy port             5028
  Destination user name  johndoe
```

## ESS call home logs and location

The **esscallhomeconf** command logs the progress and error messages in the `/var/log/messages` file, the `/var/log/ess/` folder, and `/var/adm/ras/mmsysmonitor.log` file.

There is a **--verbose** option that provides more details of the progress and error messages. The following example displays the type of information sent to the `/var/log/messages` file on the EMS node by the **esscallhomeconf** command.

```
# grep essems4 /var/log/messages | grep esscallhomeconf
Feb 23 10:07:14 essems4 /esscallhomeconf: End point ems1-ib registered successfully with
systemid ed28297131f0d2b469edffc505a9708c
Feb 23 10:07:20 essems4 /esscallhomeconf: [I] End point essio11-ib registered successfully with
systemid db25a7e21ff4298243078806f964c495
Feb 23 10:07:20 essems4 /esscallhomeconf: [I] End point essio12-ib registered successfully with
systemid f9887f2bba6dee858146206dda96eb48
Feb 23 10:07:51 essems4 /esscallhomeconf: [I] End point proto11-ib registered successfully with
systemid 12ca060f30f9276cd52828fc117b0675
Feb 23 10:26:59 essems1 /esscallhomeconf: [I] End point enclosure EB15089 registered
```

```

successfully with systemid 72fadb281627047372f9ada47ed2fcb4
Feb 23 10:27:05 essem1 /esscallhomeconf: [I] End point enclosure EB15094 registered
successfully with systemid b266c524642846255f38a493e99bf10a
Feb 23 10:27:05 essem1 /esscallhomeconf: [I] End point enclosure EB15090 registered
successfully with systemid 8f9a45df3eb6137f6890ab18cf4c2957
End point enclosure EB15090
Feb 23 10:27:28 essem1 /esscallhomeconf: [I] ESA configuration for ESS Call home is complete.
Feb 23 10:28:04 essem1 /esscallhomeconf: [I] Software callhome configuration completed.

```



**Attention:** The **esscallhomeconf** command also configures the IBM Spectrum Scale call home setup. The IBM Spectrum Scale call home feature collects files, logs, traces, and details of certain system health events from the I/O and EMS nodes and services running on those nodes. These details are shared with the IBM support center for monitoring and problem determination. For more information on IBM Spectrum Scale call home, see IBM Spectrum Scale documentation in IBM Documentation.

**Note:** The ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS 3500 hardware call home is backed by software call home. In other words, software call home must be configured by using the **esscallhomeconf** command, without the **--no-swcallhome** switch in the ESS 3000 or the ESS 3200 environment. Otherwise, the ESS 3000 or the ESS 3200 hardware failure events are not reported to ESA and a PMR does not get opened.

The endpoints are visible in the ESA portal after registration, as shown in the following figure:

| Name                      | System Health | ESA Status | System Type |
|---------------------------|---------------|------------|-------------|
| ems1                      | ✓             | ...        | ...         |
| essio11.isst.gpfs.ibm.net | ✓             | ...        | ...         |
| essio12.isst.gpfs.ibm.net | ✓             | ...        | ...         |
| G5CT016                   | ✓             | ...        | ...         |
| G5CT018                   | ✓             | ...        | ...         |
| ems1                      | ✓             | ✓          | ...         |

Figure 8. ESA portal after node registration

### Name

Shows the name of the endpoints that are discovered or registered.

### SystemHealth

Shows the health of the discovered endpoints. A green icon (✓) indicates that the discovered system is working fine. The red (X) icon indicates that the discovered endpoint has some problem.

### ESAStatus

Shows that the endpoint is reachable. It is updated whenever there is a communication between the ESA and the endpoint.

### SystemType

Shows the type of system being used. Following are the various ESS device types that the ESA supports.

| ESS Device type   | Icon |
|-------------------|------|
| ESS Application   |      |
| Disk              |      |
| Disk Enclosure    |      |
| Management Server |      |
| Node              |      |
| Physical Server   |      |
| Virtual Server    |      |
| Other             |      |

bi8pdg004

Figure 9. List of icons showing various ESS device types

Detailed information about the node can be obtained by selecting **System Information**. Here is an example of the system information:

#### System Information

| Property              | Value                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Name                  | essio12.isst.gpfs.ibm.net        |
| Machine Type          | 8247                             |
| Machine Model         | 22L                              |
| Serial Number         | 2145B3A                          |
| Manufacturer          | IBM                              |
| Operating System      | Linux                            |
| OS Type               | Linux                            |
| OS Version            | 3.10.0-327.36.3.el7.ppc64        |
| OS Additional Version |                                  |
| IP Address            | 192.168.1.103 192.168.2.103      |
| Firmware              |                                  |
| PM Enabled            | No                               |
| ESA Status            | Offline                          |
| System ID             | 898fb33e04f5ea12f2f5c7ec0f8516d4 |

bi8pdg005

Figure 10. System information details

When an endpoint is successfully registered, the ESA assigns a unique system identification (system id) to the endpoint. The system ID can be viewed using the **--show** option.

For example:

```
# esscallhomeconf -E ems4 --show
System id and system name from ESA agent
{
  "32eb1da04b60c8dbc1aaaa9b0bd74976": "78ZA006",
  "6304ce01ebe6dfb956627e90ae2cb912": "ems4-ce",
  "a575bdce45efcfdd49aa0b9702b22ab9": "essio41-ce",
```

```
}
  "5ad0ba8d31795a4fb5b327fd92ad860c": "essio42-ce"
}
```

When an event is generated by an endpoint, the node associated with the endpoint must provide the system id of the endpoint as part of the event. The ESA then assigns a unique event id for the event. The system id of the endpoints are stored in a file called `esaepinfo01.json` in the `/vpd` directory of the EMS and I/O servers that are registered. The following example displays a typical `esaepinfo01.json` file:

```
# cat /vpd/esaepinfo01.json
{
  "enc1": {
    "78ZA006": "32eb1da04b60c8dbc1aaaa9b0bd74976"
  },
  "esaagent": "ems4",
  "node": {
    "ems4-ce": "6304ce01ebe6dfb956627e90ae2cb912",
    "essio41-ce": "a575bdce45efcfd49aa0b9702b22ab9",
    "essio42-ce": "5ad0ba8d31795a4fb5b327fd92ad860c"
  }
}
```

The endpoints are visible in the ESA portal after registration. For more information, see IBM Spectrum Scale call home documentation.

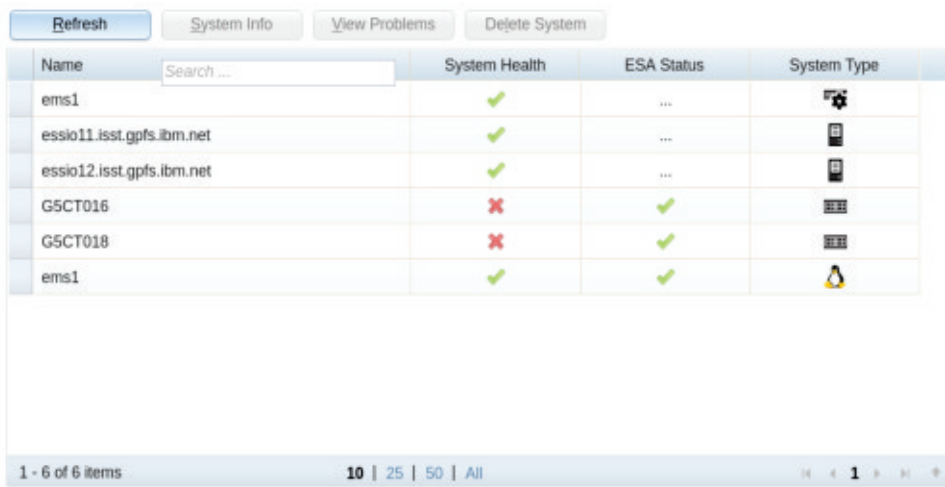
## Overview of a problem report

After ESA or unified call home is activated, and the endpoints for the nodes and enclosures are registered, they can send an event request to initiate a call home.

For example, when `replace` is added to a `pdisk` state, indicating that the corresponding physical drive needs to be replaced, an event request is sent to ESA with the associated system id of the enclosure where the physical drive resides. After ESA receives the request, it generates a call home event. Each server in the ESS is configured to enable callback for IBM Spectrum Scale RAID related events. These callbacks are configured during the cluster creation, and updated during the code upgrade. ESA can filter out duplicate events when event requests are generated from different nodes for the same physical drive. ESA returns an event identification value when the event is successfully processed. The ESA portal updates the status of the endpoints. The following figure shows the status of the enclosures when the enclosure contains one or more physical drives identified for replacement.

### ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS 3500, and ESS Legacy Disk enclosure failure call home event

- `pdReplacePdisk` - When a `pDisk` needs replacement inside an enclosure, ESA will get an event and a corresponding PMR will get opened. This event is not meant to report the server operating disk failure.



| Name                      | System Health | ESA Status | System Type |
|---------------------------|---------------|------------|-------------|
| ems1                      | ✓             | ---        | Server      |
| essio11.isst.gpfs.ibm.net | ✓             | ---        | Node        |
| essio12.isst.gpfs.ibm.net | ✓             | ---        | Node        |
| G5CT016                   | ✗             | ✓          | Enclosure   |
| G5CT018                   | ✗             | ✓          | Enclosure   |
| ems1                      | ✓             | ✓          | Server      |

Figure 11. ESA portal showing enclosures with drive replacement events

Another example is POWER9 or POWER8 hardware failure which could be an ESS 5000 or ESS Legacy IO node or EMS node or protocol node hardware failure. Hardware failure event could be DIMM failure, power supply failure, or fan failure in POWER9 or POWER8 nodes. Any of the failure events reported by the POWER nodes are recorded in OPAL log and ESS hardware call home function reads the OPAL events which need service and it is a call home event.

### ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS 3500, and ESS Legacy Hardware failure event raised in OPAL log reported by event type:

- `nodeEvent` - Any POWER9 node hardware failure which is reported in the OPAL log is a call home event that is reported with this event.

Similarly, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS 3500 x86 nodes can also report any of the hardware failure events with **mmhealth**. The ESS 3000 call home depends on software call home and **mmhealth**. In other words, software call home must be configured and **mmhealth** must detect the issue with hardware to get it reported to ESA and a PMR getting opened.

While running **esscallhomeconf** command, make sure to not use the **--no-swcallhome** switch in the ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS 3500 environment. Otherwise, the ESS 3000, ESS 3200, or ESS 3500 hardware failure events are not reported to ESA and a PMR does not get opened.

### ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS 3500 supported hardware events:

- `bootDrvFail` - When boot drive failed at canister.
- `canFailed` - When canister failed.
- `bootDrvMissing` - When boot drive missing.
- `bootDrvSmtFailed` - When boot drive smart failed.
- `canFanFailed` - When canister FAN stopped working.
- `fanFailed` - When FAN failed.
- `psFailed` - Power supply failure.
- `psFanFailed` - Power supply FAN failure.

## Problem details section of ESA

The problem descriptions of the events can be seen by selecting the endpoint. You can select an endpoint by clicking the red X.

You can use the **mmcallhome ticket list/delete** command to display unified call home information on ESS 3500 only.

```
mmcallhome ticket list
```

A sample output is as follows:

| Ticket Number | Tickets Opened<br>Creation Date | Status   | Description                                                                                |
|---------------|---------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TS008145928   | 2022-04-25 10:50:35             | New Case | Opened 00EG01E:enclosure:00EG01E/0:psu1_fan1_id0:Fan<br>psu1_fan1_id0 is failed.           |
| TS008146144   | 2022-04-25 15:30:30             | New Case | Opened 00EG01E:enclosure:00EG01E/7:enclosure_fan6_id7:Fan<br>enclosure_fan6_id7 is failed. |

```
[root@emsdev2 ~]#
```

The rest information in this section applies to ESA on ESS 5000, ESS 3000, and ESS 3200.

The following figure shows an example of the problem description.

| Refresh Problems |                              | Delete   | Details                      |                 |                        |  |
|------------------|------------------------------|----------|------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|--|
| Name             | Description                  | SRC      | Time of Occurrence           | Service Request | Service Request Status |  |
| G5CT016          | ESS500-ReplaceDisk-G5CT016-6 | DSK00001 | Wed Feb 08 01:57:24 CST 2017 | 01606754000     | Open                   |  |

| Refresh Problems |                                  | Delete          | Details                |                      |                                  |  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| Name             | Time of Occurrence               | Service Request | Service Request Status | Local Problem Status | Local Problem ID                 |  |
| G5CT016          | 101 Wed Feb 08 01:57:24 CST 2017 | 01606754000     | Open                   | Open                 | 119b46ee78c34ef6af5e0c26578c09a9 |  |

Figure 12. Problem Description

## Name

It is the serial number of the enclosure containing the drive to be replaced.

## Description

It is a short description of the problem. It shows ESS version or generation, service task name and location code. This field is used in the synopsis of the problem (PMR) report.

## SRC

It is the Service Reference Code (SRC). An SRC identifies the system component area. For example, DSK XXXXX, that detected the error and additional codes describing the error condition. It is used by the support team to perform further problem analysis, and determine service tasks associated with the error code and event.

## Time of Occurrence

It is the time when the event is reported to the ESA. The time is reported by the endpoints in the UTC time format, which ESA displays in local format.

## Service request

It identifies the problem number (PMR number).

## Service Request Status

It indicates reporting status of the problem. The status can be one of the following:

### Open

No action is taken on the problem.

### Pending

The system is in the process of reporting to the IBM support.

### Failed

All attempts to report the problem information to the IBM support has failed. The ESA automatically retries several times to report the problem. The number of retries can be configured. Once failed, no further attempts are made.

### Reported

The problem is successfully reported to the IBM support.

### Closed

The problem is processed and closed.

## Local Problem ID

It is the unique identification or event id that identifies a problem.

## Problem Details

Further details of a problem can be obtained by clicking the **Details** button. The following figure shows an example of a problem detail.

| Problem Summary                         |                                  |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Property                                | Value                            |
| Description                             | ESS500-ReplaceDisk-G5CT018-5     |
| Error Code                              | DSK00001                         |
| Local Problem Status                    | Open                             |
| Problem ID                              | 53c76032dbb54069a28db04a7c229bc3 |
| Is Test Problem?                        | false                            |
| Problem Occurrence Date/Time            | 2/8/17 1:57 AM                   |
| Transmission Summary                    |                                  |
| Property                                | Value                            |
| Service Information Sent to IBM support | Yes                              |
| Last Attempt to Send                    | 2/8/17 1:57 AM                   |
| Number of Attempts                      | 1                                |
| Service request information             |                                  |
| Property                                | Value                            |
| Problem Severity                        |                                  |
| Service Request Number                  | 01605754000                      |
| Service Request Status                  | Open                             |
| Last Changed                            | 2/8/17 1:57 AM                   |

Figure 13. Example of a problem summary

If an event is successfully reported to the ESA, and an event ID is received from the ESA, the node reporting the event uploads additional support data to the ESA that are attached to the problem (PMR) for further analysis by the IBM support team.

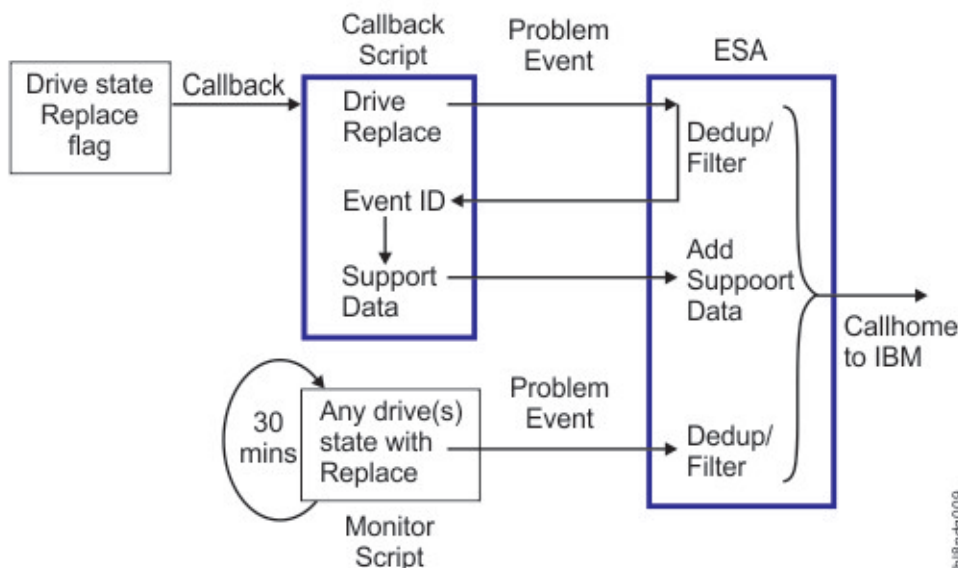


Figure 14. Call home event flow

The callback script logs information in the `/var/log/messages` file during the problem reporting episode. The following examples display the messages logged in the `/var/log/message` file generated by the `essio11` node:

- Callback script is invoked when the drive state changes to replace. The callback script sends an event to the ESA:

```
Feb 8 01:57:24 essio11 esscallhomeevent: [I] Event successfully sent
for end point G5CT016, system.id 524e48d68ad875ffbeeec5f3c07e1acf,
location G5CT016-6, fru 00LY195.
```

- The ESA responds by returning a unique event ID for the system ID in the json format.

```
Feb 8 01:57:24 essio11 esscallhomeevent:
{#012 "status-details": "Received and ESA is processing",
#012 "event.id": "f19b46ee78c34ef6af5e0c26578c09a9",
#012 "system.id": "524e48d68ad875ffbeeec5f3c07e1acf",
#012 "last-activity": "Received and ESA is processing"
#012}
```

**Note:** Here #012 represents the new line feed \n.

- The callback script runs the **ionodedatacol.sh** script to collect the support data. It collects the last 10000 lines of `mmfs.log.latest` file and the last 24 hours of the kernel messages in the journal into a `.tgz` file.

```
Feb 8 01:58:15 essio11 esscallhomeevent: [I] Callhome data collector
/opt/ibm/gss/tools/samples/ionodechdatacol.sh finished
```

```
Feb 8 01:58:15 essio11 esscallhomeevent: [I] Data upload successful
for end point 524e48d68ad875ffbeeec5f3c07e1acf
and event.id f19b46ee78c34ef6af5e0c26578c09a9
```

## Call home monitoring of ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS Legacy systems and their disk enclosures

A callback is a one-time event. Therefore, it is triggered when the disk state changes to replace. If ESA misses the event, for example if the EMS node is down for maintenance, the call home event is not generated by ESA.

**Important:** Information in this section is not applicable for ESS 3500, because ESS 3500 uses the unified call home to monitor ESS systems and disk enclosures.

To mitigate this situation, the `callhomemon.sh` script is provided in the `/opt/ibm/gss/tools/samples` directory of the EMS node. This script checks for `pdisks` that are in the `replace` state, and sends an event to ESA to generate a call home event if there is no open PMR for the corresponding physical drive. This script can be run on a periodic interval. For example, every 30 minutes.

In the EMS node, create a cronjob as follows:

1. Open crontab editor by using the following command:

```
# crontab -e
```

2. Setup a periodic cronjob by adding the following line:

```
*/30 * * * * /opt/ibm/ess/tools/samples/callhomemon.sh
```

3. View the cronjob by using the following command:

```
# crontab -l
*/30 * * * * /opt/ibm/ess/tools/samples/callhomemon.sh
```

The call home monitoring protects against missing a call home due to ESA missing a callback event. If a problem report is not already created, the call home monitoring ensures that a problem report is created.

**Note:** When the call home problem report is generated by the monitoring script, as opposed to being triggered by the callback, the problem support data is not automatically uploaded. In this scenario, the IBM support can request support data from the customer.

**Note:** A PMR is created because of the periodic checking of the replaced drive state. For example, when the callback event is missed, additional support data is not provided for the ESA agent.



**Attention:**

- In case of ESS 5000 or ESS Legacy systems, if the hardware event reported by OPAL or any disk enclosures disk error event attached to POWER IO nodes, which was missed because ESA was down or due to some other issue in the EMS node, then events can be triggered manually by invoking the **/opt/ibm/gss/tools/samples/callhomemon.sh** script. The **callhomemon.sh** script reports any missed or new hardware event reported by any POWER9 or POWER8 node, which might be a part of ESS 5000 or ESS Legacy cluster (such as POWER EMS Node, POWER protocol nodes, etc.) and ESS 3000 or ESS 3200 disk enclosures disk failure event only, if it is a part of ESS cluster.
- In case of ESS 3000 or ESS 3200 systems, if the hardware event reported by **mmhealth** is missed because ESA is down or due to some other issue in the EMS node then event can be re-triggered by using **mmhealth node eventlog --clear** followed by **mmsysmoncontrol restart**. In case the disk enclosures disk event is missed on the ESS 3000 or the ESS 3200 system because the ESA is down or due to some other issue at EMS node then event can be triggered manually by invoking the **/opt/ibm/gss/tools/samples/callhomemon.sh** script. The **callhomemon.sh** script in case of ESS 3000 or ESS 3200 only re-sends the missed or old disk enclosures disk error event and any missed or new hardware event reported by any POWER9 which might be a part of an ESS 3000 or an ESS 3200 cluster (such as POWER EMS node and POWER protocol nodes).
- In case of ESS 3500 systems, if a hardware event reported by the **mmhealth** command is missed because EMS is down or some issue, the event is re-triggered automatically when the EMS comes back online.

## Upload data

The following support data is uploaded when the ESS system disks in enclosures display a drive replace notification on an ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, ESS 3500, or ESS Legacy system.

- The output of **mmlspdisk** command for the pdisk that is in replace state.
- Additional support data is provided only when the event is initiated as a response to a callback. The following information is supplied in a .tgz file as additional support data:
  - Last 10000 lines of **mmfs.log.latest** from the node which generates the event.
  - Last 24 hours of the kernel messages (from journal) from the node which generates the event.

The following support data is uploaded when the system displays any hardware issue in an ESS 5000 or an ESS Legacy system.

- The output of the **opal\_elog\_parse** command for the serviceable event that caused failure.
- Additional support data is provided only when the event is initiated as a response to a callback. The following information is supplied in a .tgz file as additional support data:
  - Last 10000 lines of **mmfs.log.latest** from the node which generates the event.
  - Last 24 hours of the kernel messages (from journal) from the node which generates the event.

The following support data is uploaded when the system displays any hardware issue in an ESS 3000 or an ESS 3200 system.

- The output of the **mmhealth** command and the actual component that caused failure.
- Additional support data is provided only when the event is initiated as a response to a callback. The following information is supplied in a .tgz file as additional support data:
  - Last 10000 lines of **mmfs.log.latest** from the node which generates the event.
  - Last 24 hours of the kernel messages (from journal) from the node which generates the event.

# Uninstalling, reinstalling, and troubleshooting the IBM Electronic Service Agent

---

The ESA agent is preinstalled in the EMS node from the factory.

Issue the following command to remove the rpm if needed:

```
# yum remove esagent.pLinux-4.5.7-1.noarch
```

Issue the following command to reinstall the rpm files for the ESA agent:

```
# yum localinstall path/esagent.pLinux-4.5.7-1.noarch.rpm
```

Where the path is /install/ess/otherpkgs/rhels8/ppc64le/ess. The path can also be /opt/ibm/ess/mnt/installer/otherpkgs/rhels7/ppc64le/ess or /opt/ibm/ess/mnt/installer/otherpkgs/rhels8/x86\_64/ess if **essmgr** is run to start the container.



## Attention:

- The ESA agent requires the Open JDK 8 files to be installed on the provided node by the using the standard RHEL DVD. The gpfs . java package must be installed on the node but make sure that JAVA\_HOME is not pointing to the gpfs . java installed directory because gpfs . java contains JDK 11 which is not compatible with ESA.
- Make sure that there is no other JDK such as JDK 11 or any other version of the JDK other than JDK 8 (provided by standard RHEL DVD) installed on the EMS node. ESA uses the default Java™ version which is in default the PATH and it must be Open JDK v8.x. If a JDK version other than JDK 8 is installed and the default PATH to Java uses a different version of JDK, the ESA activation will fail and call home function will not work.
- Administrator can clean any other or older version of JDK by using the **yum remove <install\_java>** command and then mount the DVD ISO provided by the ESS binary and get the Open JDK 8 installed on EMS node.
- Do not change the gpfs . java package either by re-installing or uninstalling or else GPFS GUI functionality will not work.

## Test call home

---

The configuration and setup for call home must be tested to ensure that the disk replace event can trigger a call home.

The test is composed of three steps:

- ESA connectivity to IBM - Check connectivity from ESA to IBM network. This might not be required if done during the activation.

```
/opt/ibm/esa/bin/verifyConnectivity -t
```

- ESA test call home - Test call home from the ESA portal. Go to **All systems > System Health** for the endpoint from which you would like to generate a test call home. Click **Send Test Problem** from the newly opened **Problems** tab.
- ESS call home script setup to ensure that the callback script is set up correctly.

Verify that the periodic monitoring is set up.

```
crontab -l
[root@ems1 deploy]# crontab -l

*/30 * * * * /opt/ibm/ess/tools/samples/callhomemon.sh
```

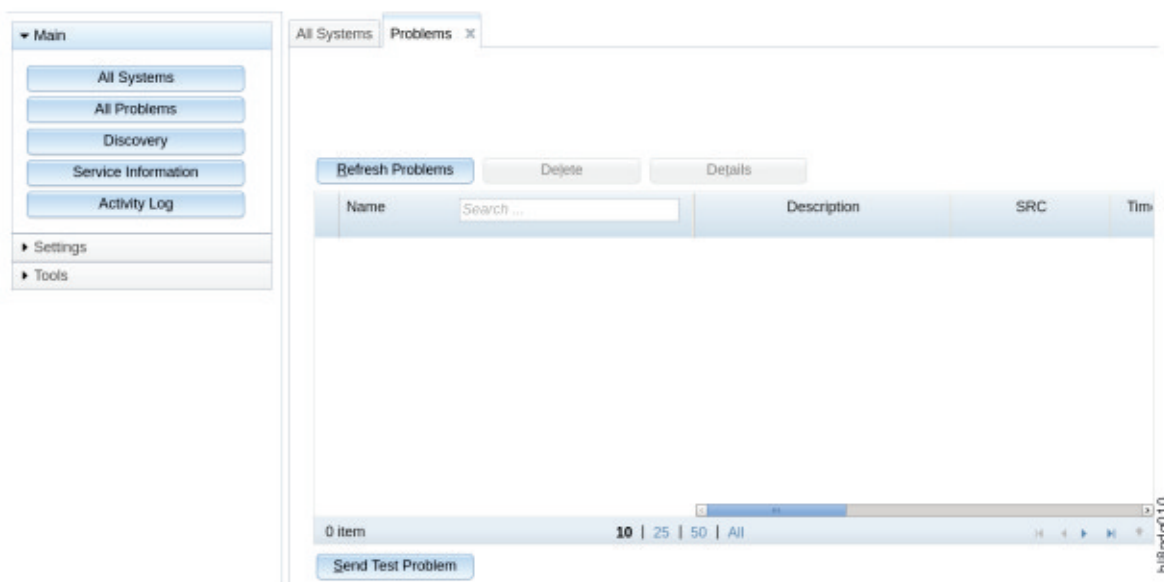


Figure 15. Sending a test problem with ESA web user interface

## Callback script test

Verify that the system is healthy by issuing the **gnrhealthcheck** command. You must also verify that the active recovery group (RG) server is the primary recovery group server for all recovery groups. For more recovery group details, see the *IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration* guide.

### Example:

To test the callback script, select a pdisk from each enclosure alternating recovery groups. The purpose of the test call home events is to ensure that all the attached enclosures can generate call home events by using both the I/O servers in the building block.

For an ESS 5000 building block, select a pdisk from each enclosure alternating recovery groups. The purpose of the test call home events is to ensure that all the attached enclosures can generate call home events by using both the I/O server nodes in the building block.

In an ESS 5000 system, select a pdisk from each enclosure alternating the paired recovery groups. The purpose of the test call home is to ensure that all the attached enclosures can generate call home events by using both the I/O Server nodes in the building block.

For example, in a SC2 system with 5147-106 enclosures, one can select pdisks e1s001 (left RG, rgL) and e2s106 (right RG, rgR). Similarly, for a SL2 system with 5147-092 enclosures, one can select pdisks e1s02 (left RG, rgL) and e2s92 (right RG, rgR). You must find the corresponding recovery group and active server for these pdisks. Send a disk event to the ESA from the active recovery group server as shown in the following steps:

1. ssh to essio11.

Here the paired recovery groups are rg1L and rg1R, and the corresponding active I/O server nodes are essio11-ib and essio12-ib.

**Note:** This applies to both ESA and unified call home and all flavors of ESS.

Select the event to see the details:

```
esscallhomeevent --event test
```

2. ssh to essio12 and run the following command:

```
esscallhomeevent --event test
```

## Post setup activities

Perform the following post setup activity.

- Delete any test problems.

## essinstallcheck enhancement of software and hardware call home

**essinstallcheck** is now capable of checking and verifying that the systems are configured with software and hardware call home. If the cluster is not yet created, the command skips checking for software call home.

```
# essinstallcheck -N localhost
Start of install check
nodelist: localhost
Getting package information.
[WARN] Package check cannot be performed other than on EMS node. Checking nodes.
===== Summary of node: localhost =====
[INFO] Getting system firmware level. May take a long time...
[INFO] Getting system profile setting.
[INFO] Spectrum Scale RAID is not active, cannot get gpfs Installed
version:
[OK] Linux kernel installed: 4.18.0-372.57.1.el8_6.x86_64
[ERROR] Systemd not at min recommended level: 239-58.el8_6.12.x86_64
[ERROR] Networkmgr not at min recommended level: 1.36.0-13.el8_6.x86_64
[OK] Mellanox OFED level: MLNX_OFED_LINUX-5.9-0.5.6.1
[OK] IPR SAS FW: 19512C00
[OK] ipraid RAID level: 10
[ERROR] ipraid RAID Status: found Degraded expected Optimized
[OK] IPR SAS queue depth: 64
[ERROR] System Firmware : found FW860.81 (SV860_215) expected min
FW860.90 (SV860_226)
[OK] System profile setting: scale
[OK] System profile verification PASSED.
[INFO] Cluster not yet created skipping rsyslog check
[OK] Host adapter driver: 41.00.00.00
Performing Spectrum Scale RAID configuration check.
[OK] New disk prep script: /usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/tspreparenewdiskforuse
[OK] Network adapter MT4099 firmware: 16.27.2008, net adapter count: 3
[OK] Network adapter firmware
[INFO] Storage firmware check is not required as GPFS cluster does not exist.
[OK] Node is not reserving KVM memory.
[OK] IBM Electronic Service Agent (ESA) is activated for Callhome service.
[OK] Software callhome check skipped as cluster not configured.
End of install check
[PASS] essinstallcheck passed successfully
```

You can view two more lines in the **essinstallcheck** output (in bold face) which mention that ESA is activated (ESA activation indicates that the hardware call home is also configured for this ESS) and software call home has been configured for this node. This is a very important check which enables customers to configure hardware and software call home after the cluster creation and the file system creation is done.

**Remember:** Enable the hardware and the software call home at the end of the ESS system deployment when the file system is active, nodes are ready to serve the file system, and none of the configuration is pending.

## Call home pre-installation worksheets

Fill in the following call home worksheets before the installation.

| General Information                                      |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Primary Contact for Providing Site Access:<br>(Required) |  |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| <b>General Information</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |
| Contact Information for Primary Contact (Phone & Email):<br>(Required)<br><b>Note:</b> If the phone number is provided, indicate if it is a mobile number or office number.                                               |  |
| <b>System Location Settings</b>                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| <b>Note:</b> The sequence of the following information aligns with the configuration panels in the Electronic Service Agent.                                                                                              |  |
| Country or Region:<br>(Required)<br><b>Note:</b> You need to provide the Alpha-2 Code for this entry. You can obtain this information by searching for the country code on <a href="#">ISO Online Browsing Platform</a> . |  |
| State or Province:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |
| Postal Code:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |
| City:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |
| Street Address:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |
| Building, Floor, Office:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
| Telephone Number:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| <b>Service Contact Settings - Company Information</b>                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| Company Name:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                               |  |
| Street Address:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |
| City:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |
| State or Province:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Service Contact Settings - Company Information</b>                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| Country or Region:<br>(Required)<br><b>Note:</b> You need to provide the Alpha-2 Code for this entry. You can obtain this information by searching for the country code on <a href="#">ISO Online Browsing Platform</a> . |  |
| Postal Code:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |
| Fax Number:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |
| Alternate Fax Number:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |
| Help Desk Number:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| <b>Service Contact Settings - Primary Contact</b>                                                                                                                                                                         |  |
| Contact Name:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                               |  |
| Telephone Number:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| Alternate Telephone Number:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |
| E-mail Address:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |
| Alternate E-mail Address:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |
| Pager Number:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                               |  |
| <b>Service Contact Settings - Secondary Contact</b>                                                                                                                                                                       |  |
| Contact Name:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                               |  |
| Telephone Number:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| Alternate Telephone Number:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Service Contact Settings - Company Information</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| E-mail Address:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |
| <b>Notifications Settings - Email Notification</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |
| Enable E-mail Notification (Y or N):<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |
| SMTP Server Name:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |
| Port:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |
| User ID:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |
| Password:<br>(Optional)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |
| Email Address(s) to Receive Notifications:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |
| <b>Notifications Settings - SNMP Traps</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| Enable SNMP Trap (Y or N):<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |
| Target Network Host:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |
| Community:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |
| Port:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |
| <b>IBM ID Settings</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |
| <p>IBM provides customized web tools and functions that use information collected by IBM Electronic Service Agent. The access to these functions is managed by an association between your IBM ID(s) and the Electronic Service Agent information from your systems. The association is made using this page. To obtain an IBM ID, which is used by many IBM web sites, go to <a href="http://www.ibm.com/registration">http://www.ibm.com/registration</a></p> |  |
| IBM ID(s) to Add:<br>(Required)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |



---

## Appendix D. Security-related settings in ESS

The following topics describe how to enable security related settings in ESS.

- [“Working with firewall in ESS” on page 69](#)
- [“Working with sudo in ESS ” on page 71](#)

---

### Working with firewall in ESS

Enabling firewall in an ESS environment is a one-step process and it can be enabled for EMS, I/O server nodes, and protocol nodes by using the **firewall** sub-command of the **essrun** command.

By default, any node in an ESS cluster has firewall disabled. You can run the **firewall** sub-command of the **essrun** command. This command can be run after the deployment of EMS node or I/O server nodes is complete.

- Enable firewall on the EMS node by running the **firewall** sub-command with the enable option.

```
# essrun -N ems1 firewall enable
```

You can check the status of the firewall as follows.

```
# firewall-cmd --state  
running
```

- Enable firewall on I/O server nodes by running the **firewall** sub-command with the enable option.

```
# essrun -N nodeList firewall enable
```

You can check the status of the firewall as follows.

```
# firewall-cmd --state  
running
```

- Disable firewall on the EMS node by running the **firewall** sub-command with the disable option.

```
# essrun -N ems1 firewall disable
```

- Disable firewall on I/O server nodes by running the **firewall** sub-command with the disable option.

```
essrun -N nodeList firewall disable
```

---

### Working with SELinux in ESS

Enabling SELinux in an ESS environment is a two-step process and it can be enabled for EMS and I/O server nodes using the **selinux** sub-command of the **essrun** command.

By default, any node in an ESS cluster has SELinux disabled. You can run the **selinux** sub-command of the **essrun** command to enable or disable SELinux on nodes. This command can be run after the deployment of EMS node or I/O server nodes is complete.

- Enable SELinux on the EMS node as follows.
  - a) Run the **selinux** sub-command on the EMS node.

```
# essrun -N ems1 selinux permissive
```

**Note:** Make sure that you reboot the node when the **selinux** sub-command completes.

- b) Reboot the node.

```
# systemctl reboot
```

The node is rebooted and it comes up with SELinux in Permissive mode.

```
# sestatus
SELinux status:                enabled
SELinuxfs mount:              /sys/fs/selinux
SELinux root directory:       /etc/selinux
Loaded policy name:            targeted
Current mode:                  permissive
Mode from config file:         permissive
Policy MLS status:             enabled
Policy deny_unknown status:    allowed
Max kernel policy version:     31
```

c) Rerun the **selinux** sub-command with the enable option to enforce SELinux.

```
# essrun -N ems1 selinux enable
```

No reboot is required in this case.

```
# sestatus
SELinux status:                enabled
SELinuxfs mount:              /sys/fs/selinux
SELinux root directory:       /etc/selinux
Loaded policy name:            targeted
Current mode:                  enforcing
Mode from config file:         enforcing
Policy MLS status:             enabled
Policy deny_unknown status:    allowed
Max kernel policy version:     31
```

After SELinux is enabled, kernel logs any activity in the `/var/log/audit/audit.log` file.

- Enable SELinux on I/O server nodes as follows.

a) Run the **selinux** sub-command on the I/O server nodes.

```
# essrun -N ess_x86_64 selinux permissive
```

**Note:** Make sure that you reboot the node when the **selinux** sub-command completes.

b) Reboot the I/O server nodes.

```
# systemctl reboot
```

The node is rebooted and it comes up with SELinux in Permissive mode.

c) Rerun the **selinux** sub-command with the enable option to enforce SELinux.

```
# essrun -N ess_x86_64 selinux enable
```

No reboot is required in this case.

After SELinux is enabled, kernel logs any activity in the `/var/log/audit/audit.log` file.

- Disable SELinux on ESS nodes as follows.

- To disable SELinux on the EMS node, use the following command.

```
# essrun -N ems1 selinux disable
```

Reboot the node after the command completes. When the node comes up after reboots, SELinux is disabled.

You can check the status as follows.

```
# sestatus
SELinux status:                disabled
```

- To disable SELinux on the I/O server nodes, use the following command.

```
# essrun -N ess_x86_64 selinux disable
```

Reboot the node after the command completes. When the node comes up after reboots, SELinux is disabled. Any I/O server node name can also be used instead of the group name.

**Additional information:** Any mentioned security item is an optional feature and you can enable it on demand for an ESS cluster. Security commands can be run using the **essrun** command after deployment of the node is done and before creating the GPFS cluster. In upgrade cases, any such security commands must be run after stopping the GPFS cluster. Do not attempt to run any security command while GPFS cluster is up and running.

**Container consideration:** Make sure that none of the security command is run against the container node. The container has a very light footprint of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x OS on which any security parameters are not supported.

## Working with sudo in ESS

Enabling sudo requires a sudo-capable user (gpfsadmin) to be added to all nodes which are a part of or which are going to be a part of an ESS cluster. Sudo must be enabled for EMS and I/O server nodes by using the **sudo** sub-command of the **essrun** command.

**Note:** Sudo user across all GPFS nodes must have the same Linux group ID and user ID.

- [“Enabling sudo on ESS” on page 71](#)
- [“Disabling sudo on ESS” on page 71](#)

### Enabling sudo on ESS

You can enable sudo configuration on a Linux node by using the enable option of the **sudo** sub-command.

```
# essrun -N nodeList sudo enable
```

**Note:** To configure a sudo user, see the **essrun sudo** command in the Elastic Storage System: Command Reference.

This command creates the gpfsadmin Linux user and gpfs Linux group on the node and performs all necessary sudoers set up. For detailed information, see the `/etc/sudoers.d/ess_sudoers` file.

User can now log in to the node server using the gpfsadmin user and they can perform GPFS administration tasks.

Make sure that the **sudo** sub-command is run on all GPFS nodes (EMS node, I/O server nodes, and any client nodes) as part of the cluster to be completely compliant with the sudo requirement. Change the node name in the **sudo** sub-command accordingly. Enabling sudo also allows the gpfsadmin user to administer xCAT and the GPFS GUI on the EMS node.

### Disabling sudo on ESS

You can disable sudo configuration on a Linux node by using enable option of the **sudo** sub-command.

```
# essrun -N nodeList sudo disable
```

Disabling sudo reverts the xCAT policy table to its previous state, deletes `/etc/sudoers.d/ess_sudoers` file, and deletes the gpfsadmin user from the Linux node. Make sure that you have disabled sudo user configuration on all GPFS nodes (EMS node, I/O server nodes, and any client nodes) as part of the cluster to be completely compliant with the sudo requirement. Change the node name in the **sudo** sub-command accordingly.

**Important:** You must not disable sudo user until the GPFS cluster is set to configure not to use sudo wrapper and sudo user. Failing to do so might result in cluster corruption.

## Enabling root access on ESS

To enable root access, issue the following command:

```
# essrun -N nodeList sudo enable_root --sudo-password YourSudoPassword
```

## Disabling root access on ESS

To enable root access, issue the following command:

```
# essrun -N nodeList sudo disable
```

**Note:** You can disable root in all ESS nodes except ESS 3000.

---

## Appendix E. Enabling Chrony timeset in ESS

Enabling Chrony timeset in an ESS environment is done as follows. It can be enabled for EMS, I/O server nodes, and protocol nodes by using the **timeset** sub-command of the **essrun** command.

By default, any node in an ESS cluster has the Chrony timeset disabled. This command can be run after the deployment of the EMS node or I/O server nodes is complete.

**Note:** The Chrony timeset works in a client-server model. You need to edit the client's `chrony.conf` file with the management IP address of the Chrony server. You also need to edit the server's `chrony.conf` with the comma-separated IP addresses of clients. The file location is `/etc/chrony.conf`.

Enable Chrony on client nodes:

```
# essrun -N nodeList timeset client --server-ip your.ntp.server.ip
```

**Note:** If you need to set up a node as a server issue the following command:

```
# essrun -N ems1 timeset server --server-network your.ntp.server.network/mask
```

This command requires EMS to have firewall enabled. Because NTP requests come from certain ports that are blocked for EMS nodes by default.



---

## Appendix F. Upgrading the POWER9 firmware

The POWER9 firmware must be upgraded manually. If the firmware is not at the latest level, do the following steps.

1. Copy the firmware `img` file from the container to the POWER9 EMS or the POWER9 protocol node.

```
cd /install/ess/otherpkgs/rhels8/ppc64le/firmware/  
sftp EMSNode  
mput 01VL950_131_045.img
```

2. Shut down the container.

```
podman stop ContainerName
```

3. Upgrade the firmware.

- a) Run the following command.

```
update_flash -v -f 01VL950_131_045.img
```

- b) If there are no issues, execute the update.

```
update_flash -f 01VL950_131_045.img
```

The system restarts and the firmware is upgraded. This process might take up to 1.5 hours per node.

**Note:** If you plan to upgrade the POWER8 EMS firmware, you can retrieve the code (01SV860\_245\_165.img file) from the following location inside the container:

```
/install/ess/otherpkgs/rhels7/ppc64le/firmware/
```

Follow the same steps to upgrade the POWER8 EMS firmware. The level after the upgrade will be SV860\_245\_165 (FW860.B3). The level after upgrade of the POWER9 firmware will be FW950.80 (VL950.131).

---

## Manually updating a boot drive for ESS 5000

Complete the following steps to update a boot drive:

1. Get the HDD10KV9-4K-9F26-LINUX.rpm file that is available in the `/install/ess/otherpkgs/rhels8/ppc64le/firmware` container and transfer it to the I/O nodes.

```
scp <complete file with path> ionode:/root
```

2. Install the rpm on an I/O node.

```
# rpm -ivh /root/HDD10KV9-4K-9F26-LINUX.rpm
```

3. Check the installed package.

```
# rpm -ql ibm.sas.HDD10KV9-4K-9F26-1.noarch  
/lib/firmware/IBM-ST1200M.A1800017.39463236  
/lib/firmware/IBM-ST1800M.A1800017.39463236  
/lib/firmware/IBM-ST600MM.A1800017.39463236
```

4. Check whether any boot drives need to be updated.

```
# ls SCSI -g | grep -i storage
```

A sample output is as follows:

|           |             |              |      |   |          |
|-----------|-------------|--------------|------|---|----------|
| [1:0:0:0] | storage IBM | ST1800MM0139 | 9F14 | - | /dev/sg1 |
| [1:0:1:0] | storage IBM | ST1800MM0139 | 9F14 | - | /dev/sg2 |

Here,

**ST1800MM0139**

This is the product ID.

**/dev/sg1 and /dev/sg2**

These are the storage devices.

**9F14**

This is the device version.

5. Check whether the firmware file matches to the product ID.
6. If the firmware file and the product ID are matching, upgrade the firmware.

```
/lib/firmware/IBM-ST1800M.A1800017.39463233
```

7. Upgrade the code on each device.

```
# iprconfig -c update-ucode /dev/sg1 /lib/firmware/IBM-ST1800M.A1800017.39463236
```

A sample output is as follows:

```
# iprconfig[147710]: 0:0:0:0: Updating device microcode using /lib/firmware/IBM-ST1800M.A1800017.39463236 from 39463233 (9F23) to 39463236 (9F26)
```

8. Upgrade the same code on the /dev/sg2 device.

```
# iprconfig -c update-ucode /dev/sg2 /lib/firmware/IBM-ST1800M.A1800017.39463233
```

A sample output is as follows:

```
# iprconfig[147710]: 0:0:0:0: Updating device microcode using /lib/firmware/IBM-ST1800M.A1800017.39463236 from 39463233 (9F23) to 39463236 (9F26)
```

9. After both devices are successfully updated, reboot the I/O node.
10. Check whether the firmware version is changed.

```
# lsscsi -g | grep -i storage
```

A sample output is as follows:

|           |             |              |      |   |          |
|-----------|-------------|--------------|------|---|----------|
| [0:0:0:0] | storage IBM | ST1800MM0139 | 9F26 | - | /dev/sg1 |
| [0:0:1:0] | storage IBM | ST1800MM0139 | 9F26 | - | /dev/sg2 |

The firmware version is changed from 9F14 to 9F26.

## Appendix G. How to set up chronyd (time server) in non-ESS nodes

**Note:** The following time server setup documentation is for general reference. You can configure the time server as suitable for your environment. In the simplest example, the EMS host is used as the time server and the I/O nodes (or protocol nodes) are used as clients. Customers might want to have all nodes point to an external time server. Use online references for more detailed instructions for setting up Chrony.

Chrony is the preferred method of setting up a time server. NTP is considered deprecated. Chrony uses the NTP protocol.

For the following example steps, it is assumed that the EMS node is the chronyd server and there is no public internet synchronization.

- Do the following steps on the EMS node, outside of the container.
  - a) Set the time zone and the date locally.
  - b) Edit the contents of the `/etc/chrony.conf` file.

**Note:** Replace the server and the allow range with the network settings specific to your setup.

```
# Use public servers from the pool.ntp.org project.
# Please consider joining the pool (http://www.pool.ntp.org/join.html).
#server 0.rhel.pool.ntp.org iburst
#server 1.rhel.pool.ntp.org iburst
#server 2.rhel.pool.ntp.org iburst
#server 3.rhel.pool.ntp.org iburst
server 192.168.7.1 prefer iburst

# Record the rate at which the system clock gains/losses time.
driftfile /var/lib/chrony/drift
local stratum 8
manual

# Allow the system clock to be stepped in the first three updates
# if its offset is larger than 1 second.
makestep 1.0 3

# Enable kernel synchronization of the real-time clock (RTC).
rtcsync

# Enable hardware timestamping on all interfaces that support it.
#hwtimestamp *

# Increase the minimum number of selectable sources required to adjust
# the system clock.
#minsources 2

# Allow NTP client access from local network.
#allow 192.168.0.0/16
allow 192.168.7.0/24

# Serve time even if not synchronized to a time source.
#local stratum 10

# Specify file containing keys for NTP authentication.
#keyfile /etc/chrony.keys

# Specify directory for log files.
logdir /var/log/chrony

# Select which information is logged.
#log measurements statistics tracking
```

- c) Save the changes in `/etc/chrony.conf` file.
- d) Restart chronyd.

```
systemctl restart chronyd
```

```
chronyc makestep
chronyc ntpdata
timedatectl
```

- Do the following steps on the client nodes (canister nodes or ESS nodes).

a) Edit the contents of the `/etc/chrony.conf` file.

**Note:** Replace the server and the allow range with the network settings specific to your setup.

```
# Use public servers from the pool.ntp.org project.
# Please consider joining the pool (http://www.pool.ntp.org/join.html).
#server 0.rhel.pool.ntp.org iburst
#server 1.rhel.pool.ntp.org iburst
#server 2.rhel.pool.ntp.org iburst
#server 3.rhel.pool.ntp.org iburst
server 192.168.7.1 prefer iburst

# Record the rate at which the system clock gains/losses time.
server master iburst
driftfile /var/lib/chrony/drift
logdir /var/log/chrony
log measurements statistics tracking

# Allow the system clock to be stepped in the first three updates
# if its offset is larger than 1 second.
makestep 1.0 3

# Enable kernel synchronization of the real-time clock (RTC).
rtcsync

# Enable hardware timestamping on all interfaces that support it.
#hwtimestamp *

# Increase the minimum number of selectable sources required to adjust
# the system clock.
#minsources 2

# Allow NTP client access from local network.
#allow 192.168.0.0/16
#allow 192.168.7.0/24

# Serve time even if not synchronized to a time source.
#local stratum 10

# Specify file containing keys for NTP authentication.
#keyfile /etc/chrony.keys

# Specify directory for log files.
logdir /var/log/chrony

# Select which information is logged.
#log measurements statistics tracking
```

b) Save the changes in the `/etc/chrony.conf` file.

c) Restart chronyd.

```
systemctl restart chronyd
```

```
chronyc makestep
chronyc ntpdata
timedatectl
```

# Appendix H. ESS protocol node deployment by using the IBM Spectrum Scale installation toolkit

The following guidance is for adding a protocol node after storage deployment in an ESS environment.

**Note:** The following instructions for protocol node deployment by using the installation toolkit is just an example scenario. For detailed and latest information, see the following topics.

- [Installing IBM Storage Scale on Linux nodes with the installation toolkit](#)
- [Configuring the CES and protocol configuration](#)

## Prerequisites

- During file system creation, adequate space is available for CES shared root file system. For more information, see [“During file system creation, adequate space is available for CES shared root file system”](#) on page 79
- ESS container has the protocol node management IP addresses defined. For more information, see [“ESS container has the protocol node management IP addresses defined”](#) on page 79.
- ESS container has the CES IP addresses defined. For more information, see [“ESS container has the CES IP addresses defined”](#) on page 80.

## During file system creation, adequate space is available for CES shared root file system

In a default ESS setup, you can use the Ansible® based file system task to create the recovery groups, vdisk sets, and file system. By default, during this task, 100% of the available space is attempted to be consumed. If you plan to include protocol nodes in your setup, you must leave enough free space for the required CES shared root file system. Use the **--size** flag to adjust the space consumed accordingly.

For example: **essrun -N ess\_ppc64le filesystem --suffix=-hs --size 80%**

Running this command leaves approximately 20% space available for the CES shared root file system or additional vdisks. If you are in a mixed storage environment, you might not use the **essrun filesystem** task due to more complex storage pool requirements. In that case, when using **mmvdisk**, make sure that you leave adequate space for the CES shared root file system. The CES shared root file system requires around 20 GB of space for operation.

## ESS container has the protocol node management IP addresses defined

Before running the ESS container make sure to add the protocol node management IP addresses to `/etc/hosts`. These IP addresses are given to the SSR through the TDA process and they are already set. The customer needs to define host names and add the IP addresses to the EMS node `/etc/hosts` file before running the container.

You also need to define the high-speed IP address and host names. The IP addresses get set when running the Ansible network bonding task but the host names and IP addresses must be defined in `/etc/hosts` before the container starts. The high-speed host names must add a suffix of the management names. The IP addresses are user definable. Consult the network administrator for guidance.

For example:

```
# Protocol management IPs
192.168.45.23 prt1.localdomain prt1
192.168.45.24 prt2.localdomain prt2
# Protocol high-speed IPs
11.0.0.4 pr1-hs.localdomain prt1-hs
11.0.0.5 pr2-hs.localdomain prt2-hs
```

**Note:** localdomain is an example domain. The domain must be changed and also match that of the other nodes.

## ESS container has the CES IP addresses defined

The final item that must be defined before starting the ESS container are the CES IP addresses. The following example shows the usage of two IP addresses per node over the high-speed network. Consult the IBM Spectrum Scale documentation for best practices.

```
11.0.0.100 prt_ces1.localdomain prt_ces1
11.0.0.101 prt_ces2.localdomain prt_ces2
11.0.0.102 prt_ces3.localdomain prt_ces3
11.0.0.103 prt_ces4.localdomain prt_ces4
```

## Starting state in the example scenario

- ESS storage is deployed and configured.
- Adequate space (approximately 20 GB) is available for CES shared root file system.
- Protocol node required host names and IP addresses is defined on the EMS prior to starting the container.
- You are logged in from the ESS container.

## Instructions for deploying protocol nodes in an ESS environment

Do the following steps from the ESS container.

1. Ping the management IP addresses of the protocol nodes.

```
ping IPAddress1,...IPAddressN
```

Each protocol node must respond to the ping test indicating they have an IP address set and it is on the same subnet as the container.

2. Run the config load task.

```
essrun -N ems1,essio1,essio2,prt1,prt2 config load -p
```

If you have more than one node, you can specify them in a comma-separated list. Make sure that you add all ESS nodes in this **config load** command before continuing.

3. Create network bonds.

**Note:** Make sure that the nodes are connected to the high-speed switch before doing this step.

```
essrun -N prt1,prt2 network --suffix=-hs
```

4. Install the CES shared root file system.

```
essrun -N ess_ppc64le filesystem --suffix=-hs --ces
```

5. Install IBM Spectrum Scale by using the installation toolkit and set up CES.

Use the IBM Spectrum Scale documentation for installing IBM Spectrum Scale by using the installation toolkit and for enabling the required services for the customer environment.

You can obtain the IBM Spectrum Scale installation toolkit from IBM Fix central. For example,

```
Storage_Scale_Data_Management-5.1.8.1-x86_64-Linux-install
```

(data management edition example, you must download data access if you have that edition)

For more information, see:

- [Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples.](#)

- [Adding CES HDFS nodes into the centralized file system.](#)
- [ESS awareness with the installation toolkit.](#)
- [Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples](#)
- [Installing IBM Storage Scale on Linux nodes and deploying protocols](#)
- [Deploying protocols](#)
- [Upgrading IBM Storage Scale protocol nodes](#)



## Appendix I. Protocol virtual machine deployment on ESS 3500 I/O nodes

Until ESS 6.1.2, the deployment of protocol nodes was supported through POWER 64 LE nodes. However, from ESS 6.1.3.1, the protocol nodes deployment is moved on ESS 3500 nodes to reduce the initial deployment cost and support the protocol deployment in the ESS 3500 environment.

From ESS 6.1.3.1, you can run a virtual machine (VM) on an ESS 3500 I/O node canister to support protocol services such as NSF and SMB, which are enabled for an ESS cluster.

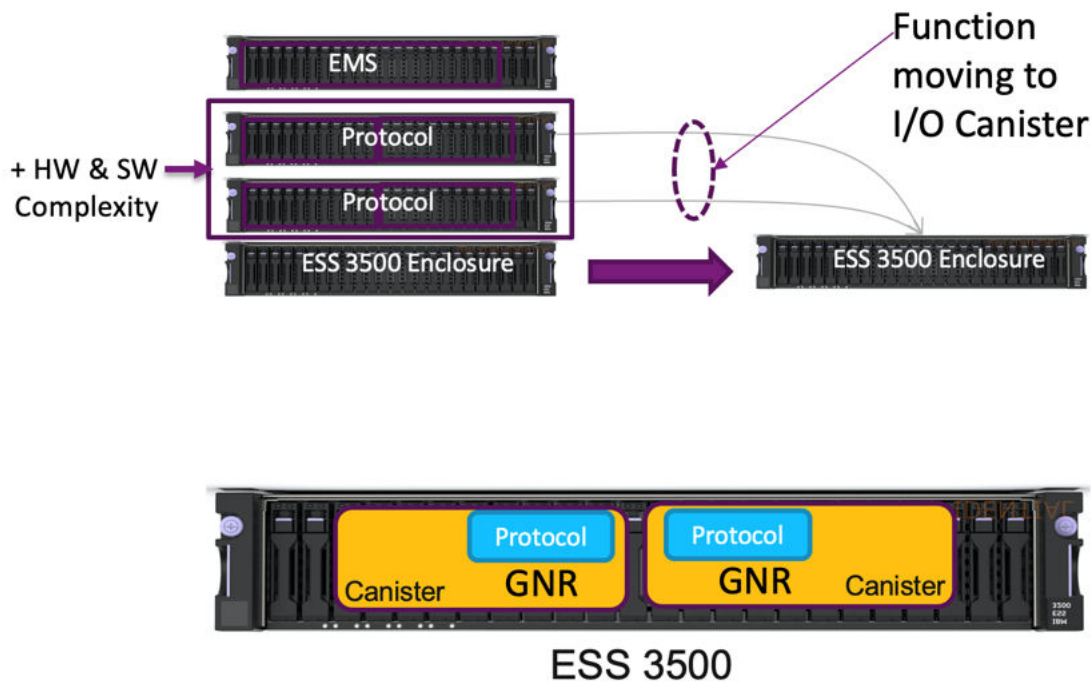


Figure 16. Protocol VM deployment on ESS 3500 I/O nodes

### Hardware requirements

The hardware requirements to run protocol nodes as a VM on an I/O node are as follows:

- 8 CPU cores
- 64 GB of RAM
- 64 GB of /essvm file system

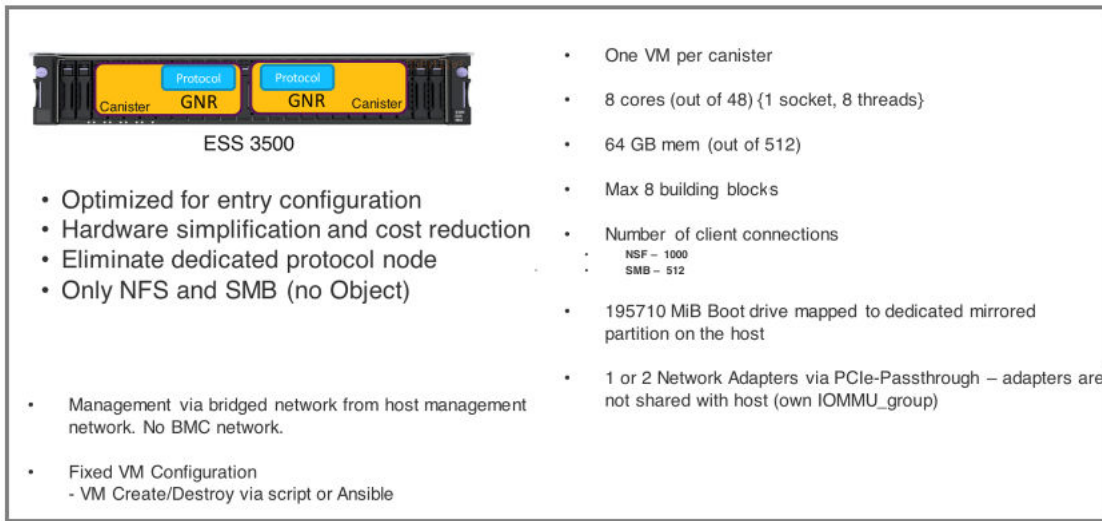


Figure 17. Hardware requirements

These requirements are provided out of the box with ESS 3500.

## Protocol VM implementation

The deployment of protocol binaries and services remains the same by using the IBM Spectrum Scale install toolkit.

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before you deploy and use a protocol VM in the ESS 3500 environment:

- ESS 3500 nodes are completely deployed.
- A CES shared root file system is created.

See the *ESS Quick Deployment Guide* to deploy and create a CES shared root file system in the ESS 3500 or any ESS environment.

In the **essrun** command, an argument **cesvm** is introduced. The **cesvm** argument accepts the node name as a requirement for the **--create** and **--delete** options with several physical Mellanox cards, which the protocol VM uses.

**Note:** Only one protocol VM can be run on a single I/O node canister. Therefore, for one building block of ESS 3500, you can run two VMs per canister node.

The protocol VM implementation only supports full functional protocol deployment of NFS and SMB protocols. You cannot run the Object protocol in the protocol VM environment because of limited number of CPU cores and RAM assigned to a VM. There is no such restriction to run the Object protocol, but it might impact the performance of the VMs and produce unexpected results.

The protocol VM implementation does not support a highly scalable NFS and SMB workload. However, this implementation supports small NFS and SMB workloads.

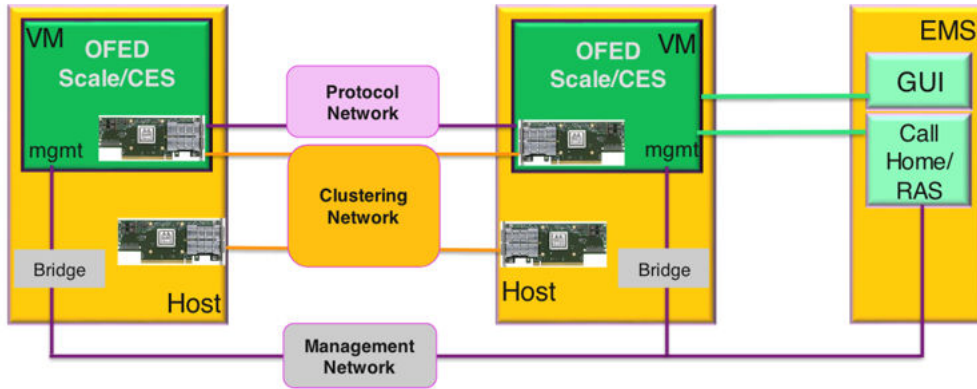
**Tip:** If you want to run a massive workload by using an NFS protocol and an SMB protocol, you can use the Power 64 LE version of the protocol node implementation instead the VM implementation.

For more information about POWER 64 node protocol node and implementation, contact IBM support.

## Network designs

Before you set up the protocol VM, you must decide on its network aspect. Usually, ESS 3500 nodes come with two or three number of, two ports per adapter, Mellanox Ethernet or Mellanox InfiniBand cards.

Figure 18. Protocol in a VM - logical network



The following figure contains slot mapping details:

| Slot Number                                        | Usage                           | VM Usage when Configured                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Slot 1 – Network                                   | Network: CX6 or CX7 (Dual port) | CX6 – host IOMMU group                                    |
| Slot 2 – Network or Aux Card or SAS                | Network: CX6 or SAS: 9500-16e   | CX6 – host or guest IOMMU group<br>SAS – host IOMMU group |
| Slot 3 – Network                                   | Network: CX6 or CX7 (Dual port) | CX6 – guest IOMMU group                                   |
| Slot 4 – Network (Aux card or CX6) or SAS (Note 1) | Network: CX6 or SAS: 9500-16e   | SAS – host IOMMU group<br>CX6 – host or guest IOMMU group |

Figure 19. ESS 3500 slot placement summary

To run a protocol VM, you must assign one of the Mellanox network adapters (2 ports) to the VM that provides the following connections:

- CES (first port of the network adapter) connection
- GPFS admin or daemon (second port of the network adapter) connection

In the following figures, two types of network connections are shown:

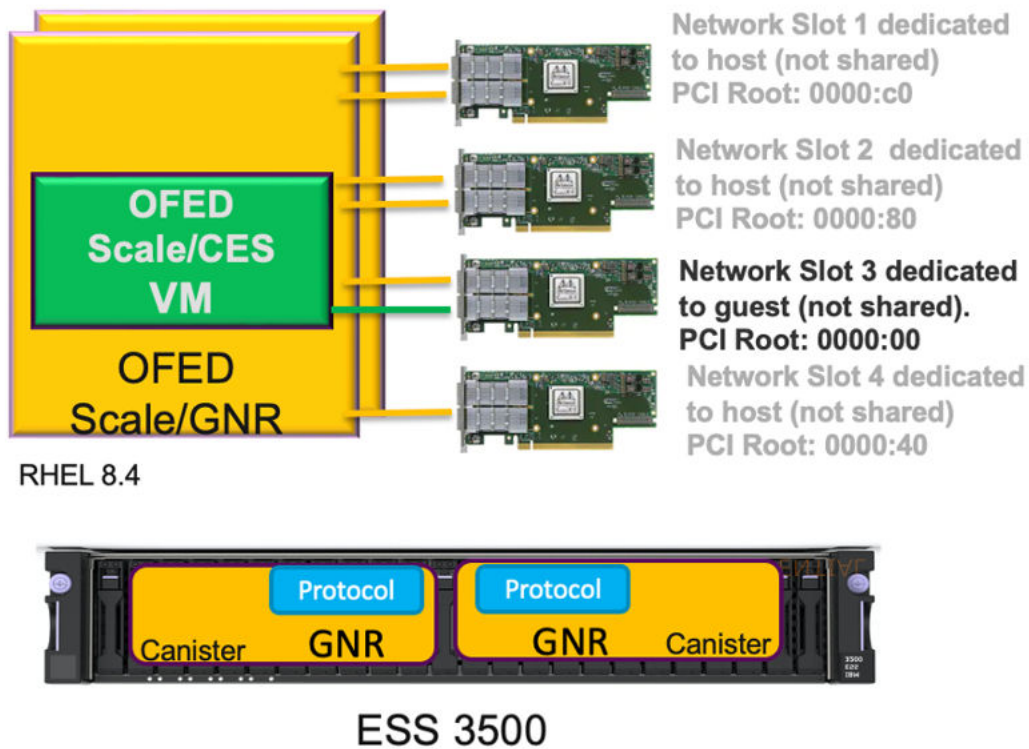


Figure 20. One dedicated card for VM

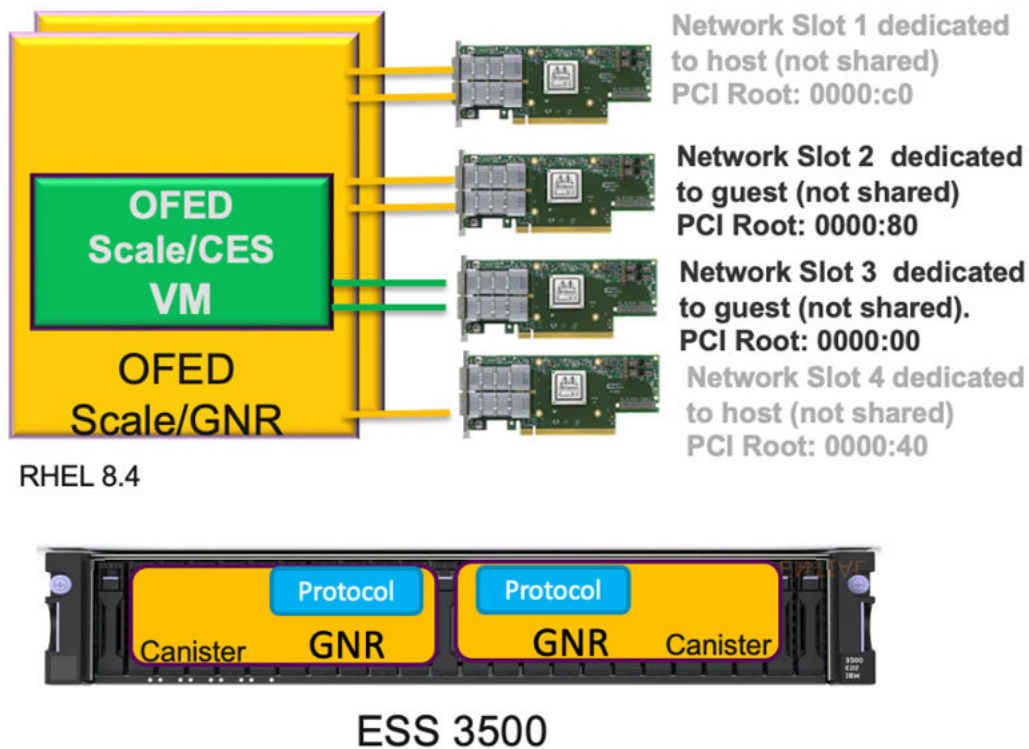


Figure 21. Two dedicated cards for VM

- Yellow is for GPFS admin or daemon network.
- Green is for CES network.

Apart from the new CES networks, the other network requirement of the ESS remains the same as the management and interlink network.

**Important:** When a network card is assigned to the VM, the network interfaces disappear from the host. You can see them in the VM.

The VM also needs Mellanox OFED and other requirements, such as physical I/O nodes to deploy a protocol VM. Complete the following steps before a VM protocol implementation:

1. Initialize the management network in the VM by using the **ess\_instnic.essvm** command, to get the management network connectivity in the VM.
2. Reboot the I/O nodes after the VM operating system is updated.
3. Update the VM by using the **yum update** command.
4. Install OFED manually by using the **ess\_ofed.essvm** command.

## The essrun command

You can create a VM by using the **essrun** command.

```
# essrun cesvm --help
usage: essrun cesvm [-h] (--create | --delete) [--vm-name VMNAME] --number-of-mellanox-device-
passthru {1,2}
```

Where,

### cesvm

The **cesvm** argument in the **essrun** command can either use the **--create** or **--delete** option to create or delete a VM.

### -h, --help

Shows the help message and exit.

### --create

Creates a CES VM on an I/O node.

### --delete

Deletes a CES VM on an I/O node.

### --vm-name

Shows a user-defined VM name. Default VM is *<Node Name>-essvm*. You can optionally specify the name of a VM by using this option. However, do not provide a custom VM name unless required.

### --number-of-mellanox-device-passthru 1, 2

Provides the number of Mellanox cards, minimum 1 card and maximum 2 cards, that you want to pass in a VM. Second and third cards are passed to the VM with respective number of card value.

This option pushes either 1 or 2 Mellanox network cards (each card has two network interfaces) to the VM depending on the use case. For more information about the network behavior when you pass 1 or 2 cards by using this switch, see Figure 20 on page 86 and Figure 21 on page 86. When this option is set, the network card on a PCI root device is picked up automatically and pushed to the VM.

PCI root addresses 0000:c0, 0000:80, and 0000:00 are reserved for network cards.

If you select the **--number-of-mellanox-device-passthru 1** option, the 0000:00 PCI root network card is added to the VM. Similarly, if you select the **--number-of-mellanox-device-passthru 2** option, 0000:00 and 0000:80 PCI root network cards are added to the VM. The 0000:c0 PCI root address is reserved for the host network card.

## Example

This example shows how to create or delete a VM.

- Create a VM.

Before you create a VM, ensure that the `/etc/hosts` have the entries for VM management network IP address and hostname mapping along with VM high-speed GPFS admin or daemon. All possible CES IP address must be in `/etc/hosts`.

```
# essrun -N essio3,essio4 cesvm --create --number-of-mellanox-device-passthru 1
[INFO] Will continue with default order.
[INFO] Will continue with default order.

PLAY [Setup VM on IO node canister for CES Deployment.]
*****
*****
*****
Monday 11 April 2022 08:27:38 +0000 (0:00:00.051)    0:00:00.051 *****

TASK [Gathering Facts]
*****
*****
*****
ok: [essio4]
ok: [essio3]
Monday 11 April 2022 08:27:40 +0000 (0:00:01.494)    0:00:01.546 *****
Monday 11 April 2022 08:27:40 +0000 (0:00:00.267)    0:00:01.813 *****

TASK [/opt/ibm/ess/deploy/ansible/roles/kvmCreation : Sync ESS facts | create dir]
*****
*****
*****
ok: [essio4]
ok: [essio3]
Monday 11 April 2022 08:27:40 +0000 (0:00:00.372)    0:00:02.186 *****
```

After a VM is created, complete the following steps to deploy a protocol node:

1. For the VM management, initialize the management network by attaching it to the VM console. Issue the following command to initialize the management network:

```
virsh console essio3-essvm
```

```
ess_ssr_setup
```

2. To update the VM, issue the following commands on the container:

```
# essrun -N essio3-essvm config load
# essrun -N essio3-essvm config check
# essrun -N essio3-essvm update --offline
```

For more information, see [Deploying protocols](#).

If you want to use the CES or GPFS admin or daemon network bond in the VM, use the **essgennetwork** command to create the CES or GPFS admin or daemon network bond.

You can deploy the protocol binaries by using the IBM Spectrum Scale Install Toolkit. Download and use the **x86\_64** version of install-toolkit. Designate a protocol VM as an installer node though the setup type of install toolkit must be ESS. For more information about several types of installation, see the *IBM Spectrum Scale Install Toolkit*.

- Delete the VM.

```
# essrun -N essio3,essio4 cesvm -delete --number-of-mellanox-device-passthru 1
[INFO] The node essio3 is not registered in the Inventory
[INFO] Will continue with default order.
[INFO] The node essio4 is not registered in the Inventory
[INFO] Will continue with default order.

PLAY [Setup VM on IO node canister for CES Deployment.]
*****
*****
*****
Monday 11 April 2022 08:27:38 +0000 (0:00:00.051)    0:00:00.051 *****

TASK [Gathering Facts]
*****
*****
*****
```

```

ok: [essio4]
ok: [essio3]
Monday 11 April 2022 08:27:40 +0000 (0:00:01.494)      0:00:01.546 *****
Monday 11 April 2022 08:27:40 +0000 (0:00:00.267)      0:00:01.813 *****

TASK [/opt/ibm/ess/deploy/ansible/roles/kvmCreation : Sync ESS facts | create dir]
*****
*****
*****
ok: [essio4]
ok: [essio3]
Monday 11 April 2022 08:27:40 +0000 (0:00:00.372)      0:00:02.186 *****

```

When a VM is deleted by using **-delete** command, the network interfaces are returned to the host.

**Note:** After a VM is created or deleted, you can run the **virsh** command to manage the VM.

For more information about the **essrun** command, see this command in the ESS Command Reference.



## Appendix J. Sample scenarios with mixed ESS types

Use these instructions for setting up ESS 3000 and ESS 5000 mixed cluster and file system.

The following high-level tasks need to be done for setting up ESS 3000 and ESS 5000 mixed cluster:

- Deploy an ESS 3000 system (including cluster, file system, GUI).
- Deploy an ESS 5000 system (adding to cluster, create recovery groups, etc.).
- Create the ESS 5000 vdisks and add to the existing file system.
- Create a policy file.
- Adjust sensors.
- Add ESS 5000 nodes to the GUI.

**Note:** These instructions contain summarized steps and references to documents that cover the items in more detail. The goal is to give an example scenario to help clients understand aspects of this procedure. At the end of this procedure, if you have POWER9 protocol nodes, for guidance in implementing them into your environment, see [Appendix H, “ESS protocol node deployment by using the IBM Spectrum Scale installation toolkit,” on page 79.](#)

### Prerequisites

- SSR has completed code 20 on both the ESS 3000 and ESS 5000 nodes (including EMS)  
SSR works on Power® nodes and the EMS node first, then the ESS 3000 system.
- Public connection setup on C11-T3 (f3 connection on EMS)
- ESS 3000 and ESS 5000 nodes have been added to `/etc/hosts`
  - Low-speed names FQDNs, short names, and IP addresses
  - High-speed names FQDNs, short names, and IP addresses (add suffix of low-speed names)
- Host name and domain set on EMS
- Latest code for ESS 3000 and ESS 5000 stored in `/home/deploy` on EMS
- For information on how to deploy the ESS system, see [ESS 3000 Quick Deployment Guide](#).
- For information on using the `mmvdisk` command, see [mmvdisk in ESS documentation](#).

### Summarized version of steps for deploying ESS 3000 building blocks

1. Extract the ESS 3000 installation package: `tar zxvf ESS3000InstallationPackage.`
2. Accept the license and deploy the container: `ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae.sh --start-container`

After logging in to the container, do the following steps:

1. Run the config load command.

```
essrun -N ESS3000Node1,ESS3000Node2,EMSNode config load -p
```

**Note:** Use the low-speed names.

2. If required, update the EMS node.

```
essrun -N EMSNode update --offline
```

3. Update the ESS 3000 nodes.

```
essrun -N ESS3000Node1,ESS3000Node2 update --offline
```

4. Create network bonds.

```
essrun -N ESS3000Node1,ESS3000Node2,EMSNode network --suffix=Suffix
```

5. Create the cluster.

```
essrun -N ESS3000NodeGroup cluster --suffix=Suffix
```

**Note:** To obtain the group name, use **lsdef -t group**.

6. Add the EMS node to the cluster.

```
essrun -N ESS3000Node1 cluster --suffix=Suffix --add-ems EMSNode
```

7. Create the file system.

```
essrun -N ESS3000NodeGroup filesystem --suffix=Suffix
```

**Note:** This command creates a combined data and metadata vdisk in the system pool. The file system name must be fs3k.

Type **exit** and press **Enter** to exit the container. Proceed with the instructions on how to setup the collector, sensors, and run the GUI wizard.

The status of the current ESS 3000 container should be exited. To confirm, use the **podman ps -a** command. For example:

```
# podman container attach cems0
ESS 3000 CONTAINER root@cems0:/ # exit
exit
# podman ps -a
CONTAINER ID   IMAGE                                COMMAND                                CREATED
STATUS
bfc2980bdfc9   localhost/ess_6.1.8.3_dme_xcat:1009-02 /myStartupScript... 7 days ago Exited
(0) 2 seconds ago                                cems0
```

If the ESS 3000 container is not in the stopped state, use the **podman stop ContainerName** command.

## Summarized version of steps to add ESS 5000

1. Extract the ESS 5000 installation package: **tar xvf ESS5000InstallationPackage**
2. Verify the integrity of the installation package: **sha256sum -c Extractedsha256sumFile**
3. Accept the license and deploy the container: **ess\_6.1.8.3\_1009-02\_dae.sh --start-container**

After you have logged into the container, do the following steps:

1. Run the config load command.

```
essrun -N ESS5000Node1,ESS5000Node2,ESS3000Node1,ESS3000Node2,EMSNode config load -p
```

**Note:** If you plan to add protocol nodes in the cluster, include them in the list of nodes that you are specifying in this command.

2. Update the nodes.

```
essrun -N ESS5000Node1,ESS5000Node2 update --offline
```

3. Create network bonds.

```
essrun -N ESS5000Node1,ESS5000Node2 network --suffix=Suffix
```

4. Add the ESS 5000 nodes to the existing cluster.

- a. SSH to one of the ESS 5000 I/O server nodes. For example:

```
ssh ESS5000Node1
```

b. Run this command.

```
essaddnode -N ESS5000Node1-hs,ESS5000Node2-hs --cluster-node ESS3000Node-hs --nodetype  
ess5k --accept-license
```

**Note:**

- Use the high-speed names.
- If there is an error, you might need to log in to each ESS 5000 node and start GPFS.

```
mmbuildgpl  
mmstartup
```

**Note:** The full list of nodetypes you can add to any environment are (for usage with `--nodetype`):

- For EMS node, use *ems*.
- For Legacy ESS IO ppc64le Server node, use *ess5x*.
- For ESS 3000, use *ess3k*.
- For ESS 5000, use *ess5k*.
- For ESS 3200, use *ess3200*.
- Default is *ems*.

Type `exit` and press Enter to exit the container. Running these commands, takes you to the ESS 5000 node.

5. Create **mmvdisk** artifacts.

a. Create the node class.

```
mmvdisk nc create --node-class ess5k_ppc64le_mmvdisk -N  
ListOfESS5000Nodes_highspeedsuffix
```

b. Configure the node class.

```
mmvdisk server configure --nc ess5k_ppc64le_mmvdisk --recycle one
```

c. Create recovery groups.

```
mmvdisk rg create --rg ess5k_rg1,ess5k_rg2 --nc ess5k_ppc64le_mmvdisk
```

d. Define vdiskset.

```
mmvdisk vs define --vs vs_fs5k_1 --rg ess5k_rg1,ess5k_rg2 code 8+2p --bs 16M --ss 80%  
--nsd-usage dataOnly --sp data
```

e. Create vdiskset.

```
mmvdisk vs create --vs vs_fs5k_1
```

f. Add vdiskset to the file system.

```
mmvdisk fs add --file-system fs3k --vdisk-set vs_fs5k_1
```

g. Add the policy file.

Define your policy file. This can be used to move data from the system pool to the data pool when thresholds hit. For more information, see [Overview of policies](#).

You can also use the GUI to define policies. For more information, see [Creating and applying ILM policy by using GUI](#).

The following example rule ingests the writes on the ESS 3000 and moves the data to ESS 5000 when it reaches 75% capacity on the ESS 3000:

- Add callback for automatic movement of data between pools:

```
mmaddcallback MIGRATION --command /usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmstartpolicy --event  
lowDiskSpace,noDiskSpace --parms "%eventName %fsName"
```

- Write the policy into a file with the following content:

```
RULE 'clean_system' MIGRATE FROM POOL 'system' THRESHOLD(75,25) WEIGHT(KB_ALLOCATED) TO  
POOL 'data'
```

**Note:** You need to understand the implications of this rule before applying it in your system. When capacity on ESS 3000 reaches 75%, it migrates files (larger ones first) out of the system pool to the data pool until the capacity reaches 25%.

- h. On the EMS node, run the following command.

```
mmaddcompspec default --replace
```

At this point, add the ESS 5000 nodes to the `pmsensors` list and use the **Edit rack components** option in the GUI to slot the new nodes into the frame.

If you want to add protocol nodes, see [Appendix H, “ESS protocol node deployment by using the IBM Spectrum Scale installation toolkit,” on page 79](#).

## Appendix K. ConnectX-5 or ConnectX-6 VPI support

Check and enable adapter port configurations on the VPI adapter as follows.

The MT4121 adapter (AJP1) allows users to configure the VPI card ports as suitable for your environment. You can choose one of the following options for each adapter (2 ports):

- Have both ports IB/IB
- Have one port IB one port Ethernet
- Have both ports Ethernet

If any port is changed, the node must be rebooted for the changes to take effect.

The following options are added to **essgennetworks** to support VPI.

### **--query**

Queries the port type of the Mellanox interface.

### **--devices *Devices***

Name of the Mellanox device name. Specifying all queries all devices attached to node. Provide comma-separated device names to query mode rather than one device at a given time.

### **--change {InfiniBand, Ethernet}**

Changes the Mellanox port type to InfiniBand or Ethernet and vice versa.

### **--port {P1, P2}**

Specifies the port number of the Mellanox VPI card.

The following example shows the usage of the **essgennetworks** command to check and enable adapter port configurations on the VPI adapter.

1. Query the port type of all attached devices.

```
# essgennetworks -N localhost --query --devices all
2020-09-23T04:24:03.397420 [INFO] Starting network generation
2020-09-23T04:24:03.579361 [INFO] nodelist: localhost
[ERROR] Mellanox Software Tools services are not running.
        Make sure Mellanox Software Tools running configuring VPI adapters.
        Make sure you must start Mellanox Software Tools using "/bin/mst start"
        command before starting the configuration of the VPI adapters.
```

2. Start Mellanox Software Tools (MST).

```
# /bin/mst start
Starting MST (Mellanox Software Tools) driver set
Loading MST PCI module - Success
[warn] mst_pciconf is already loaded, skipping
Create devices
Unloading MST PCI module (unused) - Success
```

3. Query the port type of all attached devices again.

```
# essgennetworks -N localhost --query --devices all
2020-09-23T04:24:18.083995 [INFO] Starting network generation
2020-09-23T04:24:18.268935 [INFO] nodelist: localhost
[INFO] Device /dev/mst/mt4121_pciconf1 link type currently configured at system.
[INFO] Port 1 is set to InfiniBand
[INFO] Port 2 is set to InfiniBand
[INFO] Device /dev/mst/mt4121_pciconf0 link type currently configured at system.
[INFO] Port 1 is set to InfiniBand
[INFO] Port 2 is set to InfiniBand
```

4. Convert the P1 port of the device listed in the preceding command to Ethernet from InfiniBand.

```
# essgennetworks -N localhost --change Ethernet --devices /dev/mst/mt4121_pciconf1 --port P1
2020-09-23T03:45:52.322096 [INFO] Starting network generation
2020-09-23T03:45:52.510535 [INFO] nodelist: localhost
```

```
[INFO] Changing /dev/mst/mt4121_pciconf1 Port P1 link type to Ethernet
[INFO] Successfully changes the Port type to Ethernet for Port P1
```

5. Reboot the node and query the port type of all attached devices again.

```
# essgennetworks -N localhost --query --devices all
2020-09-23T04:05:55.774019 [INFO] Starting network generation
2020-09-23T04:05:55.960088 [INFO] nodelist: localhost
[INFO] Device /dev/mst/mt4121_pciconf1 link type currently configured at system.
[INFO] Port 1 is set to Ethernet
[INFO] Port 2 is set to InfiniBand
[INFO] Device /dev/mst/mt4121_pciconf0 link type currently configured at system.
[INFO] Port 1 is set to InfiniBand
[INFO] Port 2 is set to InfiniBand
```

6. Verify that the port type of the P1 port is changed to Ethernet.

```
# mlxconfig -d /dev/mst/mt4121_pciconf1 query | grep -i link_type
LINK_TYPE_P1 ETH(2)
LINK_TYPE_P2 IB(1)
```

---

## Appendix L. Client node tuning recommendations

IBM Spectrum Scale node configuration is optimized for running IBM Spectrum Scale RAID functions.

ESS cluster node configuration is optimized for running IBM Spectrum Scale RAID functions. Protocols, other gateways, or any other non-ESS services must not be run on ESS management server nodes or I/O server nodes. In a cluster with high IO load, avoid using ESS nodes as cluster manager or filesystem manager. For optimal performance the NSD client nodes accessing ESS nodes should be properly configured. ESS ships with `gssClientConfig.sh` script located in `/usr/lpp/mmfs/samples/gss/` directory. This script can be used to configure the client as follows:

```
/usr/lpp/mmfs/samples/gss/gssClientConfig.sh <Comma Separated list of  
client nodes or nodeclass>
```

You can run the following to see configuration parameter settings without setting them:

```
/usr/lpp/mmfs/samples/gss/gssClientConfig.sh -D
```

After running this script, restart GPFS on the affected nodes for the optimized configuration settings to take effect.

**Important:** Do not run **`gssClientConfig.sh`** unless you fully understand the impact of each setting on the customer environment. Make use of the `-D` option to decide if all or some of the settings might be applied. Then, individually update each client node settings as required.



---

## Appendix M. Capacity upgrade flow in ESS 5000

For customers who are looking to add storage to an existing building block, this option is now supported. The goal of a capacity upgrade is to expand a customer's available storage, either by expanding an existing file system or adding new file systems, without the need to buy an entirely new building block. Capacity upgrade is designed to be an online operation and to not interrupt customer workloads.

### Supported paths

#### SL models (5U92)

- SL1 -> SL2
- SL2 -> SL3
- SL2 -> SL4
- SL3 -> SL4
- SL3 -> SL5
- SL4 -> SL5
- SL4 -> SL6
- SL5 -> SL6
- SL5 -> SL7
- SL6 -> SL7

#### SC models (4U106)

- SC1 -> SC2
- SC2 -> SC3
- SC2 -> SC4
- SC3 -> SC4
- SC3 -> SC5
- SC4 -> SC5
- SC4 -> SC6
- SC5 -> SC6
- SC5 -> SC7
- SC6 -> SC7
- SC6 -> SC8
- SC7 -> SC8
- SC7 -> SC9
- SC8 -> SC9

### Prerequisites

1. All new or existing building blocks must be at ESS 6.1.0.0 or later. If there are protocol nodes in the setup, they must also be upgraded to the matching ESS version.
2. If space needs to be made, for example for moving of the EMS, this has to be planned for accordingly.
3. LBS must wear an ESD wrist band when physically working on the hardware (like plugging in SAS cables).

## Capacity upgrade considerations

- Do not try to configure call home before the capacity upgrade is complete, that is until resizing is done.
- You can perform additional capacity upgrades while the DA's are rebalancing.
- You can restripe the file system while the DA's are rebalancing.
- Although it is recommended, you do not have to rebalance the file system if NSDs are added during the capacity upgrade.
- For customers who have call home enabled, remember to re-configure call home after the capacity upgrade is complete. This is the last step in the following flow or you can use the instructions in the call home configuration appendix for guidance.

## SAS cable plug-in tips

- Unlatch the cable arm from the I/O server node into which you will be plugging in the SAS cable.
- Remove the blue cap.
- Make sure the location code label from the cable matches the port location code and the port number.
- Remove the cap from the SAS cable connector and plug it into the port.
- You should hear a click when the cable is inserted correctly.

## SSR tasks

SSR is responsible for the following tasks.

1. Code 20 of the new enclosures - replacing parts as needed.
2. Running or labeling the new SAS cable connections.
3. Potentially making space in the frame - Moving the EMS.

SSR is not responsible for checking system health using **essutils** like in a rackless or a rackful solution.

## LBS tasks

LBS is responsible for the following tasks.

1. Upgrade of ESS 6.1.0.0 - prior to the capacity upgrade engagement.
2. Post capacity upgrade health checks.
3. Plugging the SAS cables into the adapters and enclosures.
4. Performing capacity upgrade software functions such as conversion and resizing.
5. New storage management functions such as adding new space to existing file system and creating a new file system.
6. Restripping the file system.
7. Replacing any bad parts such as disks or cables.
8. Pre and post engagement operations

## Flow

TDA process ensures that the customer is prepared for the capacity upgrade. Considerations such as if there is enough room in the rack or usage of the file system space are planned out.

## LBS

1. LBS performs normal ESS software upgrade. Customer must be at ESS 6.1.0.0 for the capacity upgrade. This upgrade is treated as a separate engagement than the future capacity upgrade operation.

**=== Capacity upgrade begins ===**

## SSR

1. The SSR arrives at the customer site. If the EMS needs to be moved, the SSR shuts down GPFS and powers down the server to move. For more information, see *Shutting down and powering up ESS in ESS 5.3.x Quick Deployment Guide*.
2. The SSR places the new enclosures in the rack and establishes power connection. Based on the lights, the SSR performs a code 20 operation. If lights indicate any problem, they might need to take a service action.
3. The SSR runs the new SAS cable connections and labels in a bundle and hooks them to the frame. Later when LBS comes, they simply plug in the connections when required in the flow.
4. The SSR places the EMS (if required) back into the existing frame or a new frame. Network connections and power are restored. Once the server is powered on, the SSR (or customer) can start GPFS to return the EMS back into the cluster.

## LBS

1. Power on the new enclosure(s).
  - For SLx or SCx, the power cord should be connected. Press the switch to turn on the enclosures.
2. Verify that the system is converted to mmvdisk.
  - a. **mmvdisk nodeclass list** - This command shows if the **mmvdisk** node class exists.  
This command can be run on any node in the cluster.
3. Upon arrival LBS should first perform the normal upgrade-related system verification steps. Run the following from the EMS:
  - a. **gnrhealthcheck** - This command determines if there are any issues in various areas of ESS. Any problems that show up must be addressed before capacity upgrade starts. Run this command from any node in the cluster. This command only needs to be run once.
  - b. **essinstallcheck -N localhost** - This command checks the system to ensure all components match ESS 6.1.x.x levels. Run from each node in the cluster including protocol nodes.  
**Note:** For ESS 5000, a check is added that flags whether the WCE bit is enabled on any drive. If the WCE bit is enabled, refer the published flash for the recommended action.
  - c. **mmhealth node show -N all --verbose** - This command shows any system health related issues to address. Run this command from any node in the cluster.
  - d. Look for any events or tips that are open in the GUI. These also show up when you issue **mmhealth** but it is good to check in the GUI as well. The GUI is run from the EMS node.
  - e. **/usr/sbin/opal-elog-parse -s** - Run this command from each node in the cluster to check for any serviceable events.
4. Verification steps:
  - a. **mmgetstate -a** - Issue this command to ensure that all daemons are active.
  - b. **mmismount all -L** - Issue this command to ensure that all mount points are still up. The file system must only be mounted on the EMS and protocol nodes (if applicable).

After these issues are resolved, capacity upgrade can begin.

5. Start by moving both recovery groups to **essio2-hs**.

**Note:** The following recovery group names are examples.

Move the recovery group in the current I/O server node to the peer I/O server node in the same building block.

- a. To list the recovery groups and the current master server, run:

```
mmvdisk recoverygroup list
```

- b. To move the recovery group from the current active I/O server node (rg\_essio1-hs) to the peer I/O server node (essio2-hs) in the same building block, run the following commands in the shown order:

```
mmvdisk recoverygroup change --recovery-group rg_essio1-hs --active essio2-hs
```

Running **mmvdisk recoverygroup list** should show both RGs actively managed by essio2-hs.

6. Plug in the SAS cables for essio1 on the server and enclosure ends. Shut down GPFS, only on the server just modified, and then reboot the I/O node. Wait for 5 minutes for the node to reboot and paths to be rediscovered. Run the following commands to ensure that essio1 has discovered the new enclosures.

**Note:** Before shutting down GPFS, make sure that autoloading is turned off (**mmchconfig autoloading=no**).

- a. **essstoragequickcheck -N localhost**
- b. **essfindmissingdisks -N localhost**

Both commands should return with no issues and recognize the new enclosure and disk counts. The paths should also be without error. After this is complete, start IBM Spectrum Scale on the node in question by using **mmstartup**. After determining that IBM Spectrum Scale is active by using **mmgetstate** proceed to the next step.

7. Move the recovery group ownership to essio1-hs. Use the same commands as used in [this step](#) but make sure to use the correct node name (essio1-hs).

After the preceding steps are complete, new enclosures have been successfully cabled to both servers, proceed with the following final steps.

8. Rebalance both recovery groups by running from any node in the storage cluster.

- a. **mmvdisk rg list**
- b. **mmvdisk recoverygroup change --recovery-group rg1 --active essio1-hs**
- c. **mmvdisk recoverygroup change --recovery-group rg2 --active essio2-hs**
- d. Check that the ownership has changed using the **mmvdisk recoverygroup list** command.

9. Perform the [system verification steps](#) again before proceeding.
10. Update enclosure and drive firmware. If there are any issues, you should stop and replace any disks or enclosures that could not be updated for some reason.

CurrentIoServer implies running the command from either of I/O server nodes in the building block.

**Note:** It might take up to an hour for the firmware upgrade to complete. You might notice that the fan starts to run at high speed. This is a known issue.

- a. CurrentIoServer\$ **mmchfirmware --type storage-enclosure**
- b. CurrentIoServer\$ **mmchfirmware --type drive**
- c. **mmhealth node show -N all --verbose**- This command shows any system health related issues to address. (Run from any node in the storage cluster.)
- d. **gnrhealthcheck** - This command determines if there are any issues in various areas of ESS. Any problems that show up must be addressed before capacity upgrade starts.

11. Add new storage into recovery groups.

```
mmvdisk rg resize --rg rg_essio1-hs,rg_essio2-hs -v no
```

12. Verify that the new storage is available and the DA is rebalancing.

```
mmvdisk recoverygroup list --recovery-group rg1 --all
mmvdisk recoverygroup list --recovery-group rg2 --all
```

Run for both recovery groups. Note that the additional free space available in the DA and the background task for each DA is showing as 'rebalance'.

On the EMS node, update the component database.

```
mmaddcompspec default --replace
```

13. Start up the GUI and use **Edit rack components** to have the GUI discover the new topologies and make changes to the frame accordingly. Changes such as modify ESS model to consume more U space, move EMS, and so on.
14. Reconfigure call home.

```
esscallhomeconf -E ems1 -N EMSNode,IONode1,IONode2 --suffix=-hs --register=all
```

At this point, discussions with the customers need to occur on what to do with the free space.

1. Add to the existing file system?
  - a. See the add building block flow in *ESS 5.3.x Quick Deployment Guide* for tips on creating new NSDs and adding to an existing file system.
  - b. See the add building block flow ([Appendix B, “Adding additional nodes or building block\(s\),” on page 43](#)) for tips on creating new NSDs and adding to an existing file system.
  - c. Consider file system restripe at the end which might take time. (**mmrestripefs** FileSystem -b)
2. Create a new file system.
  - See the installation section on how to use **essrun** on creating a new file system from inside the container. You may also use **mmvdisk** commands directly to perform this operation.



# Appendix N. Switch VLAN configuration instructions

This topic describes the instructions that are needed to configure an IBM Cumulus switch VLAN.

The IBM Cumulus switch would be preconfigured from manufacturing with proper VLAN that includes the following:

- Service/FSP/BMC VLAN
  - Blue network - Bottom ports
  - VLAN 101
- Management/Provisioning VLAN
  - Yellow network - Top ports
  - VLAN 102
- IBM Elastic Storage System special ports
  - Ports 1 - 12
  - Trunk ports
  - Default routes traffic to management VLAN
  - Packets with VLAN tag 101 routed to service network.

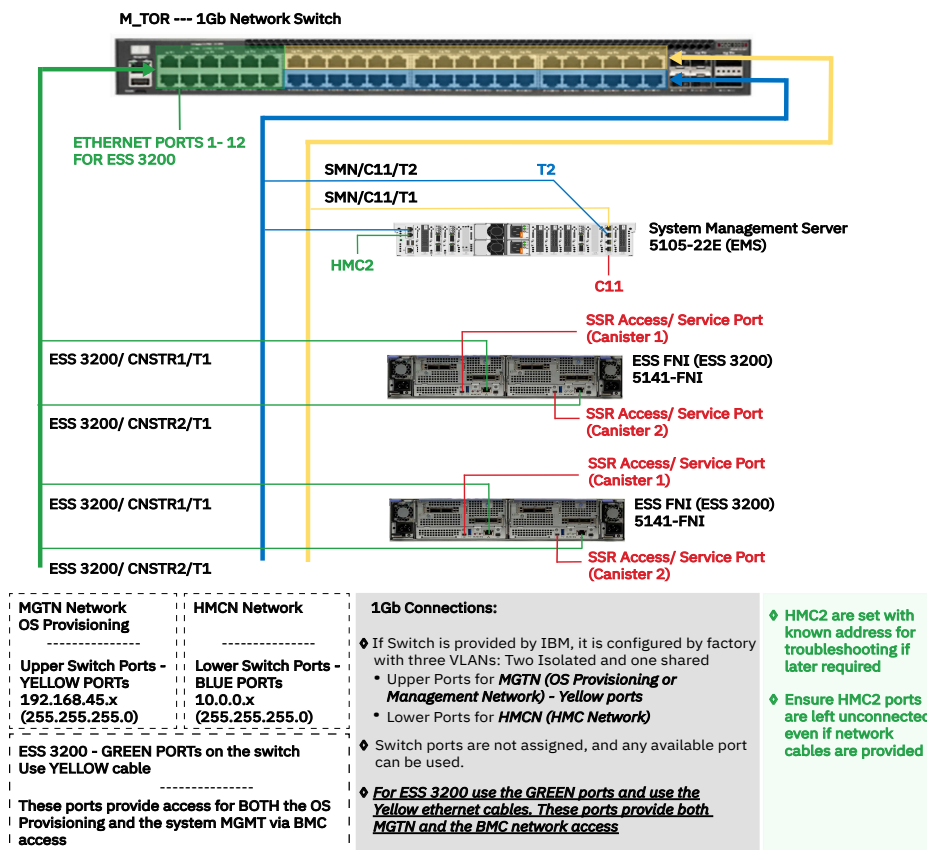


Figure 22. 1 Gb network switch

## Procedure to change switch default password

Use the following steps to change switch default password.

1. Verify the 11S label at the back of the switch as shown in the following figure.



Figure 23. 11S label

**Note:** The required software update is cumulus-3.7.12a.

2. Log in to the switch by using the following default credentials and press the Enter key.

- User ID: cumulus
- Password: CumulusLinux!

If the CumulusLinux1 default password does not work, to reset the password see the [Password Recovery](#) section in the NVIDIA documentation.

3. Use the following command to display the 11S serial number.

```
cumulus@1Gsw:~$ decode-syseeprom | grep Serial | awk '{print $5}' | cut --complement -c -3
```

The system displays the 11S serial number similar to the following:

```
01FT690YA50YD7BGABX
```

4. Change the default password to the 11S password by using the following command:

```
cumulus@accton-1gb-mgmt:~$ passwd
```

```
current UNIX password: CumulusLinux!
Enter new UNIX password: <<<Copy and paste the output provided in the 11S serial number
display step.
Retype new UNIX password: <<<Copy and paste the output provided in the 11S serial number
display step.
passwd: password updated successfully.
```

5. Log in through SSH or console and log in with the new 11S password to validate the changes.

**Note:** The default password must be set to the 11S serial number **01FT690YA50YD7BGABX**. If not, the password must be **CumulusLinux!**.

## Connect the PC to the switch console port

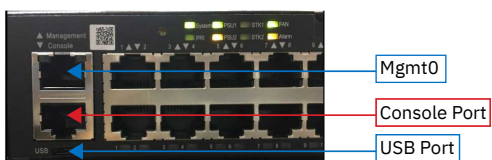


Figure 24. Switch port and switch markings

Connect the PC to the switch console port as follows:

- Connect to the switch by using RJ45 to serial cable.



Figure 25. RJ45 to serial cable and USB to serial cable

- Connect the serial end to the serial to USB cable.
- Connect the USB cable to the PC.



Figure 26. USB cable

## Configure the host PC

Configure the host PC as follows:

1. Ensure that the driver for USB to serial cable is connected on the PC.
2. Open the device manager to verify that the COM port is used by the USB to serial cable.
3. Open putty .exe and use the COM port to connect to the switch.
4. Configure PuTTY to use as follows:

- a. Baud rate - 115200
- b. Parity - none
- c. Stop bits - 1
- d. Data bits - 8
- e. Flow control - none

5. Power on the switch and wait for the login prompt to show up.
6. Log in by using the following default credentials and press the Enter key.

- User ID: cumulus
- Password: <11S serial number>

**Note:** If the switch has default Mellanox user ID and password, then proceed as follows:

- User ID: cumulus
- Password: CumulusLinux!

7. Download the VLAN configuration file `H48712_interfaces.rtf` from [here](#).

**Note:** If you do not have access to the above link, see “Full output of the interface file” on page 108.

8. Gain sudo rights by using the following command:

```
sudo su -
```

9. Copy the contents of the interface file to the file name `/etc/network/interfaces` and save the file.

**Note:** You can use **vi** or modify this file.

10. Reload the interfaces by using the following command:

```
root@cumulus:/etc/network# ifreload -a
root@cumulus:/etc/network# ifquery -a
```

11. Check VLAN setup.

```
net show interface all
```

12. If required, set switch network. It is recommended to set a static IP to log remotely on the switch. For example, 192.168.45.0/24 network IP switch 192.168.45.60, gateway 192.168.45.1.

- net add interface eth0 IP address 192.168.45.60/24
- net add interface eth0 IP gateway 192.168.45.1
- net pending

- net commit

13. Set the VLAN tag on each server canister. If this document is used, the tag must be 101.

```
# Set tag
/bin/ipmitool lan set 1 vlan id 101
# Confirm tag
/bin/ipmitool lan print 1 | grep -i 'VLAN ID'
```

## Non-IBM Cumulus switches

If you have a non-IBM Cumulus switch, use the information above as a general reference on how to modify the switch. The key is to have a designated IBM Elastic Storage System trunk ports that are apart of both VLANs.

## Modifying existing Cumulus switches

If you are converting a switch that has already non-ESS 3200 using the switch on any port in the range 1 - 12, you need to evacuate one by one those ports. If you are not using ports in the range 1 - 12, you need to apply the above process.

That means to move the cables on the upper ports in the range 1 - 12 to any free upper port that is not in the range ports 1 - 12. Equally any lower cable plugged to any port in the range 1 - 12 needs to be moved to any lower port not in the range of ports 1 - 12.

You must move one cable at the time and wait until the link LED on the destination port comes up. Once all ports in the range 1-12 are no longer cabled, you can apply the following procedure.

If an existing Cumulus switch must be modified to support IBM Elastic Storage System , the general guidance are as follows:

1. Free up at least two ports (1 IBM Elastic Storage System ) on the existing switch. It is better if you can free up a block. Ideally, the current configuration is not scattered where it is easy to convert free ports for IBM Elastic Storage System usage.
2. Take the existing interfaces file from the switch and modify it for the chosen IBM Elastic Storage System ports.
3. Make the modifications to the interfaces file.

```
auto swp10
iface swp10
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
```

Any ports that you designate as IBM Elastic Storage System ports need to have this configuration. Consult the default IBM Elastic Storage System interfaces file for more information.

4. Copy the new interfaces file to the switch.
5. Reload and verify the interfaces.
6. Set the VLAN tags on the IBM Elastic Storage System canisters.

## Full output of the interface file

H48712\_interfaces.rtf:

```
# This file describes the network interfaces available on your system
# and how to activate them. For more information, see interfaces(5).
source /etc/network/interfaces.d/*.intf
# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0
address 192.168.45.60/24
gateway 192.168.45.1
```

```

# EVEN Ports/Lower ports PVID 101 for FSP network
auto swp14
iface swp14
bridge-access 101
auto swp16
iface swp16
bridge-access 101
auto swp18
iface swp18
bridge-access 101
auto swp20
iface swp20
bridge-access 101
auto swp22
iface swp22
bridge-access 101
auto swp24
iface swp24
bridge-access 101
auto swp26
iface swp26
bridge-access 101
auto swp28
iface swp28
bridge-access 101
auto swp30
iface swp30
bridge-access 101
auto swp32
iface swp32
bridge-access 101
auto swp34
iface swp34
bridge-access 101
auto swp36
iface swp36
bridge-access 101
auto swp38
iface swp38
bridge-access 101
auto swp40
iface swp40
bridge-access 101
auto swp42
iface swp42
bridge-access 101
auto swp44
iface swp44
bridge-access 101
auto swp46
iface swp46
bridge-access 101
auto swp48
iface swp48
bridge-access 101

# ODD Ports/Upper ports PVID 102 for management network
auto swp13
iface swp13
bridge-access 102
auto swp15
iface swp15
bridge-access 102
auto swp17
iface swp17
bridge-access 102
auto swp19
iface swp19
bridge-access 102
auto swp21
iface swp21
bridge-access 102
auto swp23
iface swp23
bridge-access 102
auto swp25
iface swp25
bridge-access 102
auto swp27
iface swp27
bridge-access 102
auto swp29

```

```

iface swp29
bridge-access 102
auto swp31
iface swp31
bridge-access 102
auto swp33
iface swp33
bridge-access 102
auto swp35
iface swp35
bridge-access 102
auto swp37
iface swp37
bridge-access 102
auto swp39
iface swp39
bridge-access 102
auto swp41
iface swp41
bridge-access 102
auto swp43
iface swp43
bridge-access 102
auto swp45
iface swp45
bridge-access 102
auto swp47
iface swp47
bridge-access 102

# ESS 3200 ports (1 to 12) FSP + OS on single physical port
auto swp1
iface swp1
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp2
iface swp2
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp3
iface swp3
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp4
iface swp4
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp5
iface swp5
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp6
iface swp6
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp7
iface swp7
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp8
iface swp8
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp9
iface swp9
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp10
iface swp10
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp11
iface swp11
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101
auto swp12
iface swp12
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-vids 101

# Bridge setup

```

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
bridge-vlan-aware yes
bridge-ports glob swp1-48
bridge-pvid 101
bridge-pvid 102
bridge-stp off}
```

## Adding additional management switches

If the customer is out of ports on a single management switch, then a second one can be used to extend VLANs.

Connect the existing switch (Switch 1) port 45 to the new switch (Switch 2) port 47, and Switch 1 port 46 to Switch 2 port 48. It extends both the management and service VLANs ports to the new switch.



## Appendix O. Dual 24 port (48 ports) MGMT switch ESS configuration

This topic describes how to configure a pair of ECS4100-28T to be the ESS top of the rack (TOR) switches. For more information about the port, see [ECS4100-28T](#).

This is intended for IBM manufacturing but can be also used by field engineers if needed.

When the management TOR is part of an order, IBM will deliver two of these switches as part of that order. The reason to deliver two instead of one is to keep similar number of ports available as with the 48 ports switch option.

### Logical overview

From a logical perspective, the switches would look like the following figure:

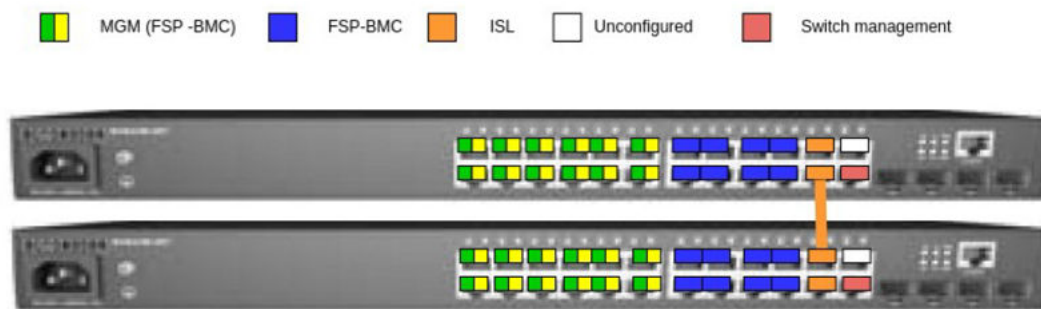


Figure 27. Logical view of two switches

The orange-colored cable shown in the figure must be connected between port 22 of the upper switch and 21 of the lower switch as a part of the configuration. That cable works as inter-switch link (ISL) between the two switches.

### Ports definitions

The following are the ports definitions:

- Ports 1 through 12, named as MGM (FSP-BMC) in the green and yellow colors, are to be used for management connections to EMS and I/O nodes. These ports are used for all ESS models, regardless they have dual MAC ports (ESS 3200 and 3500) or not (ESS 5000). This is different from the previous IBM provided TOR rack where each logical color network had dedicated ports. Green and yellow ports share the same physical ports (1 through 12).
- Ports 13 through 20, named as FSP-BMC in the blue color, are to be used for systems that have dedicated FSPBMC connections. These are POWER9 EMS (both C11-T2 and HMC1 ports) and ESS 5000 I/O nodes HMC1 ports.
- Ports 21 and 22, named as ISL in the orange color, are to be used for ISL between switches only. IBM allows to extend this setup to more than two switches on a line topology, meaning the first and last switch can only have one ISL connection to the following/previous switch. The switches that are not on the edge of that line topology have both ISL ports used to their previous and following switch on the line.
- Port 23, named as Unconfigured in the white color, is not used and is shut down. This port might be used in the future.
- Port 24, named as Switch management in the red color, is to be used to access the management functions of the switch. It is intended for customer switch management network and it is set up to get an IP address via the DHCP protocol.

- The Switch management port is set as VLAN 1305 access port by default. It should work on any setup that provides an access port connected to it. If the field setup requires a different VLAN ID, change the following line:

```
VLAN 1305 name CUSTOMER media ethernet
```

- For the VLAN ID required. Match the VLAN ID with the ID in the following block:

```
interface vlan 1305
ip address dhcp
exit
```

- If you need to set a static IP address on the Switch management, replace the DHCP in the following block:

```
interface vlan 1305
ip address dhcp
exit
```

- For the IP and netmask required. In the following example, the IP address is set to 192.168.44.22 and the netmask is set to 255.255.255.0.

```
interface vlan 1305
ip address 192.168.44.22 255.255.255.0
exit
```

## Personalization of the switch

To each switch, the following customization must be done. In this section, only one switch is customized but this customization must be repeated to the second and any other subsequent switch from any order.

It is assumed that the “Switch management” port is not used and the serial connection will be used. For this, you need the RJ-45 to DB-9 cable that comes with the switch. You might need extra adapters and/or converters to connect to your computer if you do not have a DB-9 connection on it.

The serial port RJ-45 is located on the top right of the switch, the serial configuration settings are 115200 bps, 8 characters, no parity, one stop bit and no flow control.

**Note:** The factory user is “admin” and the factory password is “admin”, if the switch is personalized already at manufacturing.

For more information, see *Quick Start Guide* in the [https://www.edge-core.com/\\_upload/images/ECS4100\\_series\\_models\\_QSG\\_R03\\_20180418.pdf](https://www.edge-core.com/_upload/images/ECS4100_series_models_QSG_R03_20180418.pdf).

Once logged in, apply the switch configuration information to both switches.

- Copy and paste the following configuration to the switch and press Enter .
- Or, copy the contents of the file in the [box](https://ibm.box.com/s/x3kzg5ykkfsu2t6536um5p0pmbg64xrl) (<https://ibm.box.com/s/x3kzg5ykkfsu2t6536um5p0pmbg64xrl>) to the switch and press Enter.
- Highlight all information and copy and paste to the switch command line after the login.

```
ip ssh crypto host-key generate
configure
ip ssh server
vlan database
VLAN 100 name ESS_MNG media ethernet
VLAN 101 name ESS_BMC media ethernet
VLAN 1305 name CUSTOMER media ethernet
exit
loopback-detection action none
no loopback-detection

interface ethernet 1/1-12
switchport mode hybrid
switchport native vlan 100
switchport allowed vlan add 100 untagged
switchport allowed vlan add 101 tagged
switchport allowed vlan remove 1
```

```

no spanning-tree loopback-detection
no shutdown
exit

interface ethernet 1/13-20
switchport mode access
switchport allowed vlan add 101 untagged
switchport native vlan 101
switchport allowed vlan remove 1
no shutdown
exit

interface ethernet 1/21-22
switchport mode hybrid
switchport native vlan 100
switchport allowed vlan add 100 untagged
switchport allowed vlan add 101 tagged
spanning-tree spanning-disabled
switchport allowed vlan remove 1
no shutdown
exit

interface ethernet 1/23
shutdown
no loopback-detection
spanning-tree spanning-disabled
exit

interface ethernet 1/24
switchport allowed vlan add 1305 untagged
switchport mode access
switchport native vlan 1305
switchport allowed vlan remove 1
no shutdown
exit

interface vlan 1305
ip address dhcp
exit

exit
copy running-config startup-config

```

Up to this point the configuration is always the same for every switch, the following lines are different for each switch. You need to know the serial number of the switch to continue. To get the serial, run show version command as shown in the following example:

```

Vty-1#show version
Unit 1
Serial Number : EC2028001435
Hardware Version : R02A
Number of Ports : 28
Main Power Status : Up
Role : Master
Loader Version : 1.0.1.9
Linux Kernel Version : 2.6.19-g496f2361-di
Operation Code Version : 1.2.71.203

```

In this example, the serial number EC2028001435 is used. You need to use the serial number of each switch on the commands.

```

configure
username guest password 0 EC2028001435
username admin password 0 EC2028001435
exit
copy running-config startup-config
exit

```

At this point, you are disconnected from the switch and the switch is personalized for ESS usage.



---

# Appendix P. Replacing all POWER8 nodes in an environment with POWER9 nodes in online mode

Replace all POWER8 nodes in your environment with POWER9 nodes in online mode by using this procedure. Cluster and file system remain up during this procedure.

## Goal

The goal is to enable the customer or SLS to swap out all the POWER8 ESS nodes in the cluster with the new POWER9 (5105-22E) nodes without taking the cluster or the file system down.

## Prerequisites and assumptions

- Existing POWER8 based ESS environment (GLxC – 4U106)
- Existing POWER8 EMS
- All POWER8 nodes (including EMS) will be swapped with POWER9 nodes.
- Existing cluster (at least storage nodes) must be fully updated to ESS 5.3.6.1 levels to match incoming POWER9 nodes.
- There are multiple building-blocks to properly drain BSDs, and maintain quorum, while keeping the cluster active and file system intact.
- There is enough space on the surviving NSDs to store existing data until new NSDs can be added to extend.
- Existing, supported ESS network and client infrastructure:
  - Management switch VLAN'd to spec
  - High-speed switch (Ethernet, InfiniBand, or both)
  - Client nodes with platforms supported by IBM Spectrum Scale
  - Optional POWER8 (5147-22L) protocol nodes in the same cluster as the ESS storage (2 or more protocol nodes)
  - Optional utility nodes, quorum servers, backup nodes, and so on.
- Supported ESS 5000 (POWER9 5105-22E) nodes that match 1-to-1 with the existing POWER8 nodes in the environment that will be swapped out.
- All POWER8 nodes must have the same high-speed adapter counts and port configuration as the POWER8 nodes that will be removed.
- The POWER9 servers should be able to be racked or powered without any changes to the existing infrastructure.

## Examples target code levels:

- ESS 5.3.6.1 – For Legacy POWER8 environment
- ESS 6.0.1.1 – For New POWER9 environment

## High-level flow

### Example environment:

- 1 x POWER8 EMS
- 2 x POWER8 ESS GLxC building-blocks
  - Each building block is in its own failure group
  - Metadata replication between failure groups

- High-speed switch (IB or Ethernet)
  - Remote client cluster
  - POWER9 EMS (5105-22E) in a box
  - 4 x POWER9 IO nodes (5105-22E) in a box
- (All P9 components all have required power cables/brackets etc)
- EMS and all 4 IO nodes are quorum nodes
    - EMS is cluster and file system manager
    - Recovery groups are balanced initially per building blocks

**Flow:**

- Encourage customer or SLS to backup data offline as a precaution. Good practice if space to do it offcluster.
  - Take a note of all IP addresses per server. LBS or SSR will need to restore when the POWER9 servers are in place. A new IP address and hostname will be needed for the POWER9 EMS
1. Ensure that the existing POWER8 environment is fully upgraded to ESS 5.3.6.1. Use the ESS 5.3.6.1 Quick Deployment Guide to perform this task.
  2. **[Optional]** Upgrade client nodes to matching IBM Spectrum Scale level (5.0.5.3) and OFED (4.9x), if applicable. Move storage release=LATEST and file system format to FULL.
  3. Exchange SSH keys between ESS and ESS 5000 (No xCAT running on POWER9 ESS 5000).
- Note:** Shut down GUI services on the POWER8 EMS
4. Add the ESS 5000 system to existing ESS cluster.
    - Configure the recovery groups.
    - Configure the vdisk sets.
    - Configure the server lists.
  5. Add ESS 5000 disks to the existing ESS file system but do not restripe.
  6. Invoke **mmchdisk suspend** on all the disks coming from the ESS so that data will only be written to ESS 5000 disks.
  7. Ensure that all GPFS nodes are active, quorum is maintained, NSDs are online, and file system is available. Ensure all storage hardware is healthy before proceeding.
  8. Suspend and empty the NSDs from the first building block. Ensure that the data has been properly restriped to the surviving NSDs before continuing.
  9. Delete the NSDs, vdisks, recovery groups, and cluster membership of drained NSD nodes (building block).
  10. Verify that the old disks are empty with the **mmldisk** command.
  11. Invoke **mmdeldisk** when all disks are emptied from ESS.
  12. **[SSR]** Power off the servers and storage enclosures of the drained building block.
  13. **[SSR]** Disconnect power and networking from the building block.
  14. **[SSR]** Swap out the building block front the frame
    - a. Insert the first pair of POWER9 nodes in their place.
    - b. Cable the swapped POWER9 nodes to the ESS 5000 Spec (SAS cables, Ethernet, high speed, and so on).
- Note:** POWER9 servers should go through the CSC process.
15. **[SSR]** Power on the new POWER9 building block and connected storage enclosures.
  16. **[SSR]** Walk through the ESS 5000 Hardware Guide code 20 flow and set the original IP addresses per node.

17. **[SSR]** Install the POWER9 EMS and walk through the full code 20 flow. Set the new IP addresses provided by the customer.
18. **[Customer or SLS]** Log in to the POWER9 EMS and walk through the *ESS 5000 Quick Deployment Guide* to fully deploy the replaced building block.
19. **[Customer or SLS]** Create network bonds with same IP addresses removed from the POWER8 nodes and new IP address for the EMS itself.
20. **[Customer or SLS]** Add EMS and POWER9 nodes to the existing POWER8 cluster.
21. **[Customer or SLS]** Create NSDs from the POWER9 connected storage.
22. **[Customer or SLS]** Add NSDs to the existing POWER8 file system.
23. **[Customer or SLS]** Force restripe or rebalance.

Repeat the preceding steps for the other POWER8 building blocks besides the POWER9 EMS rack and code 20 portion. When completed, all POWER8 nodes are swapped with POWER9 and a new set of NSDs in place; without losing file system or cluster access.

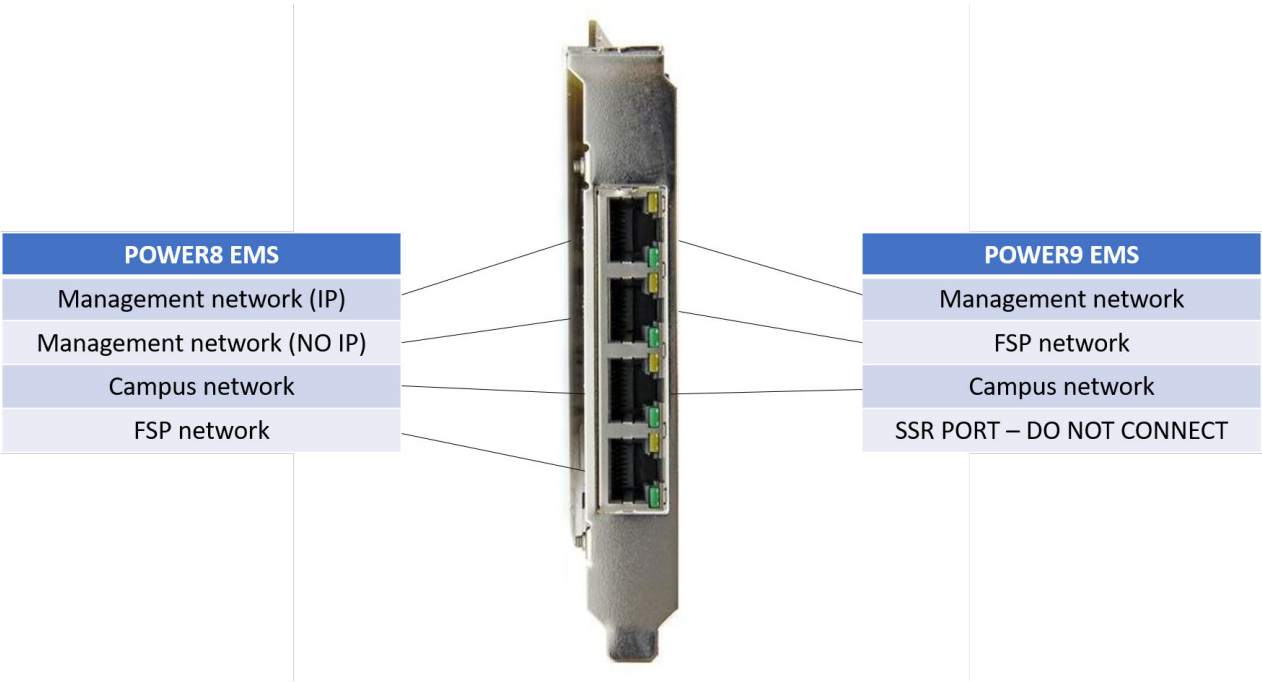
At the end of the procedure, the EMS node can be removed from the cluster and all POWER8 nodes can be repurposed, perhaps as client nodes.

The GUI, call home, and performance monitoring must be reconfigured to use the new EMS and cluster nodes, although IP addresses of the storage are the same. It is recommended to reconfigure all of these components afresh.



# Appendix Q. EMS network card port assignment

The ports on POWER8 and POWER9 EMS node network card need to be assigned as follows.





## Appendix R. Tips for migrating from xCAT based (5.3.7.x)

The topic provides information on migrating from POWER8 xCAT based (5.3.7.x).

### Note:

Refer the [Support notes and rules](#) section before proceeding with the guidance below.

A: Consider the following tips when you migrate from POWER8 xCAT based (5.3.7.x) to container based (6.1.x.x).

- You must add a new dedicated container connection to the management network to C10-T2. This connection is used by *mgmt\_bridge*.
- The *fsp\_bridge* uses the IP set for the FSP interface (C10-T4).
- The ESS 3000 and legacy containers both use the *fsp\_bridge*.
- You must uninstall xCAT completely and the related dependencies.
- You must stop the dhcp server.
- It is recommended you reconfigure the GUI clean after conversion.
- You cannot run multiple containers at the same time.
- Only the ESS Legacy and ESS 3000 containers are supported on POWER8 EMS.
- If you have a POWER8 EMS and POWER9 EMS in the same environment, you must migrate all containers to the POWER9 EMS (and move to Scale 5.1.x.x or higher if possible).
- POWER8 GUI only officially supports hardware monitoring from POWER8 nodes (and x86 nodes).
- ESS 6.1.x.x upgrade

| Table 3. RHEL kernels |                                               |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| ESS                   | Kernel                                        |
| 6.1.2.7               | 3.10.0-1160.92.1.el7                          |
| 6.1.2.6               | 3.10.0-1160.83.1.el7<br>4.18.0-372.41.1.el8_6 |
| 6.1.2.5               | 3.10.0-1160.76.1.el7                          |
| 6.1.2.4               | 3.10.0-1160.71.1.el7                          |
| 6.1.2.3               | 3.10.0-1160.62.1.el7                          |
| 6.1.2.2               | 3.10.0-1160.49.1.el7                          |
| 5.3.7.6               | 3.10.0-1160.62.1.el7                          |
| 5.3.7.5               | 3.10.0-1160.59.1.el                           |
| 5.3.7.4               | 3.10.0-1160.49.1.el7                          |
| 5.3.7.3               | 3.10.0-1160.45.1.el7                          |
| 5.3.7.2               | 3.10.0-1160.31.1                              |
| 5.3.7.1               | 3.10.0-1160.24.1                              |
| 5.3.7.0               | 3.10.0-1160.11.1.el7                          |

- It is not recommended to upgrade from ESS 5.3.7.x to ESS 6.1.1.2 anymore. Upgrade directly to ESS 6.1.2.3 or ESS 6.1.2.4. If you are updating from ESS 6.1.1.2, upgrade to 6.1.2.3 or higher (do not upgrade to 6.1.2.2).
- For ESS 5.3.7.3, consider downgrading MOFED to MLNX\_OFED\_LINUX-4.9-3.1.5.3, and then convert to 6.1.2.3 or 6.1.2.4. This is to obtain full support for online upgrade when converting to RDMA core libs.
- When upgrading to 5.3.x.x, first upgrade to ESS 5.3.7.2 or ESS 5.3.7.3, and then upgrade to 6.1.2.3 or 6.1.2.4. This upgrade is to obtain full support for online upgrade when converting to RDMA core libs.

For more information about the ESS 6.1.x.x upgrade, see [IBM Storage Scale Alert: Mellanox OFED 5.x considerations in IBM ESS V6.1.2.x+](#).

An output example after migrating the network from ESS 5.3.7.x before attempting to start the ESS 6.x.x.x container is as follows:

- Before creating the network bridges:

```
# ip a |grep "enP3\|bridge"
2: enP3p9s0f0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 192.168.45.20/24 brd 192.168.45.255 scope global noprefixroute enP3p9s0f0
3: enP3p9s0f1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
4: enP3p9s0f2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 9.155.113.184/20 brd 9.155.127.255 scope global noprefixroute enP3p9s0f2
5: enP3p9s0f3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
```

```
# Sample essmgr.yml
CONTAINER:
  BKUP: /home/backup
  CONTAINER_DOMAIN_NAME: gpfs.net
  CONTAINER_HOSTNAME: cems0
  FSP_BRIDGE_IP: 10.0.0.2
  FSP_BRIDGE_NAME: fsp_bridge
  FSP_CONTAINER_IP: 10.0.0.5
  FSP_INTERFACE: enP3p9s0f3
  FSP_SUBNET: 10.0.0.0/24
  INSTALLER_HOSTNAME: ems1
  LOG: /home/log
  MGMT_BRIDGE_IP: 192.168.45.2
  MGMT_BRIDGE_NAME: mgmt_bridge
  MGMT_CONTAINER_IP: 192.168.45.80
  MGMT_INTERFACE: enP3p9s0f1
  MGMT_SUBNET: 192.168.45.0/24
```

- After creating the bridges (./essmgr -n):

```
# ip a |grep "enP3\|bridge"
2: enP3p9s0f0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 192.168.45.20/24 brd 192.168.45.255 scope global noprefixroute enP3p9s0f0
3: enP3p9s0f1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq master mgmt_bridge state UP group default qlen 1000
4: enP3p9s0f2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 9.155.113.184/20 brd 9.155.127.255 scope global noprefixroute enP3p9s0f2
5: enP3p9s0f3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc mq master fsp_bridge state UP group default qlen 1000
65: mgmt_bridge: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 192.168.45.2/24 brd 192.168.45.255 scope global noprefixroute mgmt_bridge
67: fsp_bridge: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP group default qlen 1000
    inet 10.0.0.2/24 brd 10.0.0.255 scope global noprefixroute fsp_bridge
```

B: Consider the following tips when you migrating from POWER8 EMS to POWER9 EMS.

- Running both POWER8 EMS and POWER9 EMS in same cluster is not recommended. Uninstall xCAT on POWER8 and recommission for alternative usage.
- POWER9 EMS uses C11-T1 (management) and C11-T2 (FSP).

- You must use a campus connection for POWER9 EMS (C11-T3).
- It is recommended to reconfigure the GUI and call home after conversion to POWER9 EMS.
- POWER9 EMS can see both POWER8 and POWER9 nodes (including x86) for hardware monitoring.



# Appendix S. Enabling RoCE for IBM Elastic Storage Server

The topic describes setting up RDMA over Converged Ethernet (RoCE) to use within an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. RDMA over Converged Ethernet (RoCE) is a network protocol that allows Remote Direct Memory Access (RDMA) over an Ethernet network.

The current state of the OFED and firmware driver enables the optimization for performance and latency and simultaneously for better availability. It supports individual ports, multiple fabrics, and classical network bond to protect a service IP from network failures. With the current Mellanox OFED driver and adapter firmware, Mellanox now supports RoCEv2 over bonded interface ports from one physical NIC.

Remote Direct Memory Access (RDMA) provides a much faster access from one node's data to the other. Direct memory access from the memory of one node to the memory of another node without involving the CPU or system resources of the kernel allows more efficient use of the environment. The network and host performance improve significantly because of lower latency, lower CPU load, and higher bandwidth. In contrast, TCP/IP communications typically require copy operations, which add latency and use significant CPU and memory resources.

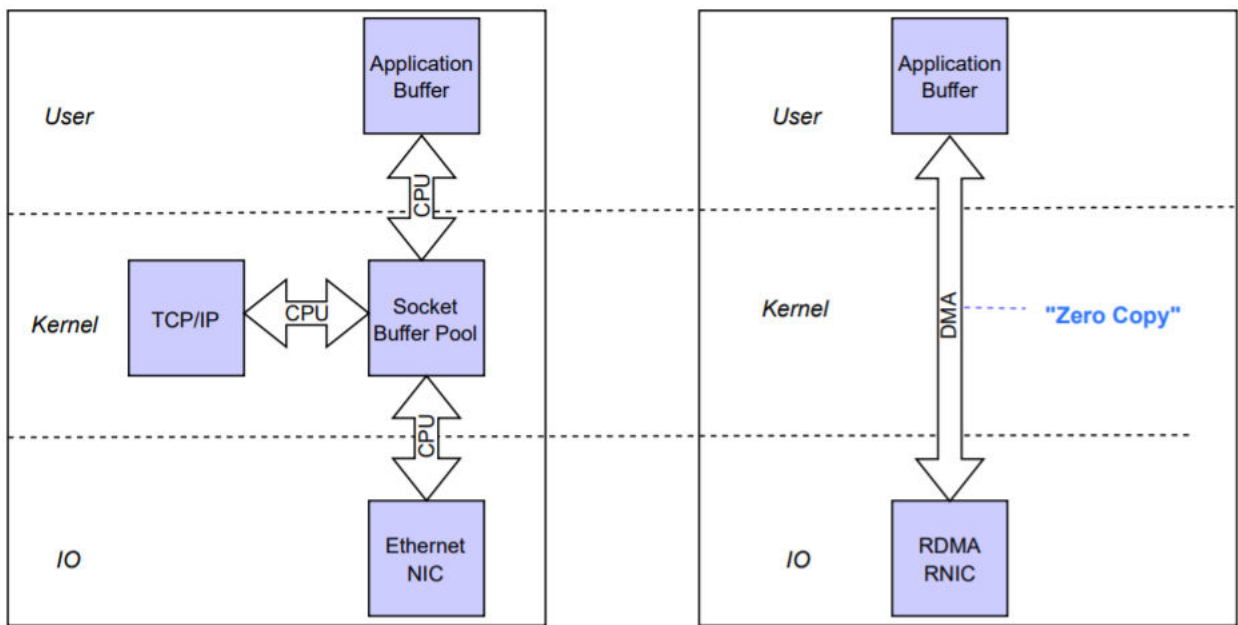


Figure 28. Comparing TCP/IP and RoCE communications

The resources, which would be typically needed to communicate by using TCP/IP are saved and can be used for real workload of the applications.

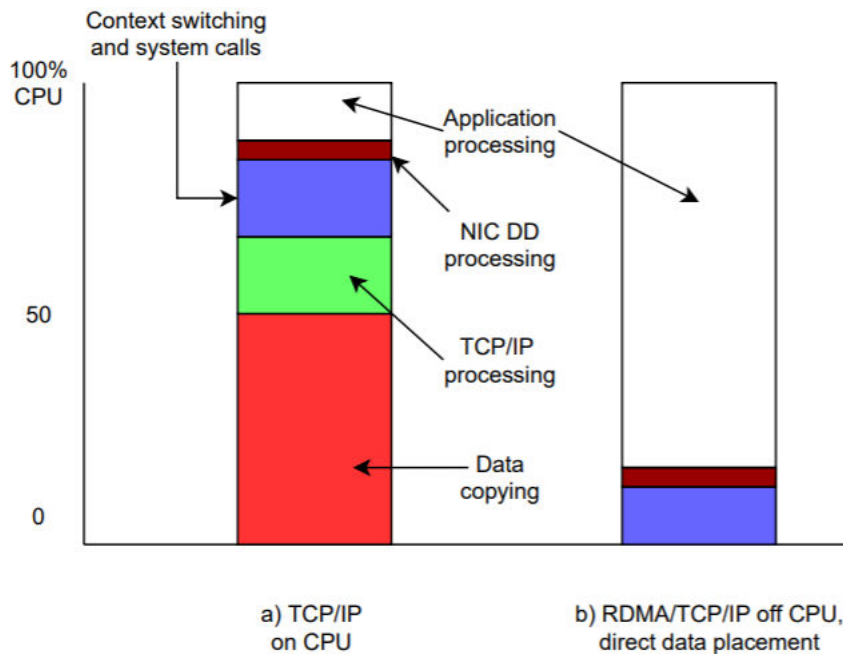


Figure 29. Comparing TCP/IP on CPU and RDMA/TCP/IP off CPU

Using RDMA has the following two major advantages.

- Ability to scale out bandwidth over multiple ports, which saves system resources.
- The higher network bandwidth results in more saving effects by using RDMA on the operating system side.

## IBM Spectrum Scale support matrix

IBM Spectrum Scale supports RDMA on Red Hat Enterprise Linux only. IBM Spectrum Scale uses the VERBS programming interface to provide RDMA support. While IBM Spectrum Scale uses the VERBS programming interface for RDMA support, the underlying implementation of RDMA is vendor-specific.

IBM Spectrum Scale supports RDMA with RoCEv2 with in the following configurations:

- Supported on Red Hat Enterprise Linux only
- Supported on platform x86\_64 and ppc64le
- Minimum Mellanox OFED Level 4.9 or later
- Minimum IBM Elastic Storage Server 6.1.6.1
- Minimum ESS models ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, and ESS 3500
- Minimum supported OS level is RHEL 8.6 for ESS 6.1.6.1

## IBM Spectrum Scale RDMA support requirements and limitations

The following restrictions apply for IBM Spectrum Scale RDMA support:

- The protocols export over CES (NFS or SMB) does not use RDMA.
- Due to the TCP/IP implementation of current IBM Spectrum Scale releases, any additional network port apart from the **mmfsd** IP interface, needs to be on a different subnet. The **mmfsd** works itself for daemon-to-daemon communication.
- InfiniBand and Omni-Path partition keys are not supported by IBM Spectrum Scale.
- IPv6 must be enabled to use RoCE, if interfaces are selected by using the port name.
- IPv6 local link address needs to be conformed with `IPV6_ADDR_GEN_MODE=eui64`.

## Mellanox requirements and restrictions

- RDMA is not supported on a node when both Mellanox HCAs and Intel Omni-Path HFI are enabled for RDMA.
- You cannot use bonded ports across different adapters for use with RoCE.
- You need to have Connect X-6 adapters or later for using with RoCE.

## RoCE Setup

You can deploy a RoCE environment by using one of the following methods:

- The simplest way is to use one adapter port per node that is connected to the network. It is achieved by using the same port for TCP/IP daemon communication and RoCE traffic concurrently.
- You can use multiple ports that are connected to a network. Use one port for TCP/IP daemon communication and RDMA in parallel and all the other ports for RDMA and RoCE traffic. You can scale out bandwidth capabilities of a node to the targeted numbers by using this configuration. It is more complex but powerful and flexible configuration method for deploying a RoCE environment.
- Mellanox and IBM together introduce a method to configure a network bond, consisting out of two ports from the same adapter to protect against cable, port, or switch issues.

**Note:** For the best performance result and reliability, configure your network as a lossless network.

Advantages and disadvantages to use or avoid bonded configuration are discussed later.

## Network requirements

For running RDMA over Ethernet, you can get the best performance when the network is configured as a lossless network. Depending on the vendor, components, and the topology, the requirement for the lossless network can quickly become complex and is out of scope.

For more information, see [Network configuration examples for RoCE deployment](#).

Make sure that all the nodes in your cluster have recent Mellanox OFED driver that is installed properly. The ESS IO server nodes are maintained by an IBM Spectrum Scale deployment. You can check the installed version by using the **ofed\_info -s** command as shown in the following example:

```
# ofed_info -s
MLNX_OFED_LINUX-x.x.x.x.x
```

**Note:** The minimum level of OFED version is documented in the release notes of Elastic Storage Server.

Ensure that the IBM Spectrum Scale client nodes run the same MOFED level as the NSD and ESS. However, in many projects and environments, it is a challenge to maintain all nodes with the same MOFED level.

It is possible that the client nodes are running the OFED software, which is distributed by the operating system. Such configurations are simple to operate and to maintain in the client clusters. However, in cases of trouble and network glitches, such configurations can cause unexpected failures.

## Network topology

The acronym host is used for an endpoint in the network. It can be an IBM Spectrum Scale client system or an ESS and NSD system.

A host's configuration depends on the number of network ports that are used or needed. The number of ports a node connects with the network depends on the expected bandwidth, the number of subnets that are needed to get access to other environments and high availability requirements.

In TCP/IP environments, scaling bandwidth with multiple ports is commonly acquired with bonding network ports, which are known as link aggregation. But bonding can have some challenging complexities. It makes the deployment complex from the network perspective.

Bonding is a commonly used technology in data centers for balancing the traffic in a network. However, bonding does not help single socket network traffic to use more than one cable. Further more, another major shortcoming of bonding is that the selection of network path is hard to predict or cannot be controlled from the application layer. Therefore, when you scale bandwidth over multiple ports, the use of RoCE is the most appropriate option.

To use a bond or not with an IBM Spectrum Scale system, the generic rule is to have at least one IP interface that is connected to the network for the daemon-to-daemon communication. A recommended network topology with bonding and RoCE is shown in the following figure.

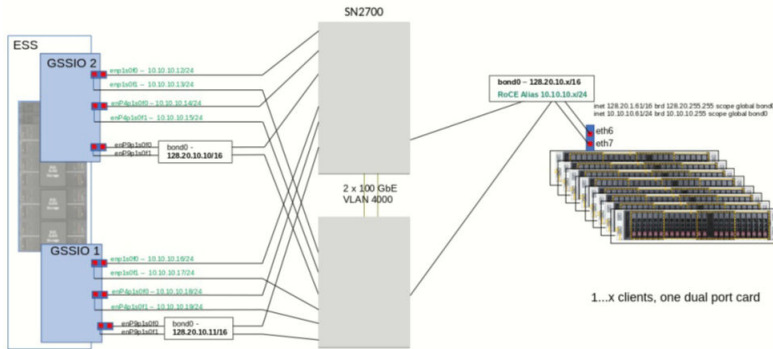


Figure 30. Displaying network topology with bonding

Depending on using a bond, it is considered that the LACP link aggregation needs to be set in the network. Alternatively, by using IBM Spectrum Scale and ESS building blocks, you can also rely on higher HA layers in IBM Spectrum Scale such as NSD and recovery group server fail over and can consider skipping bonds in your topology to make the network set up less complex. For better performance and less complex setup, it is recommended to use a configuration without bond.

For better availability, use bonded configuration. An example for a configuration without bond is shown in the following figure.

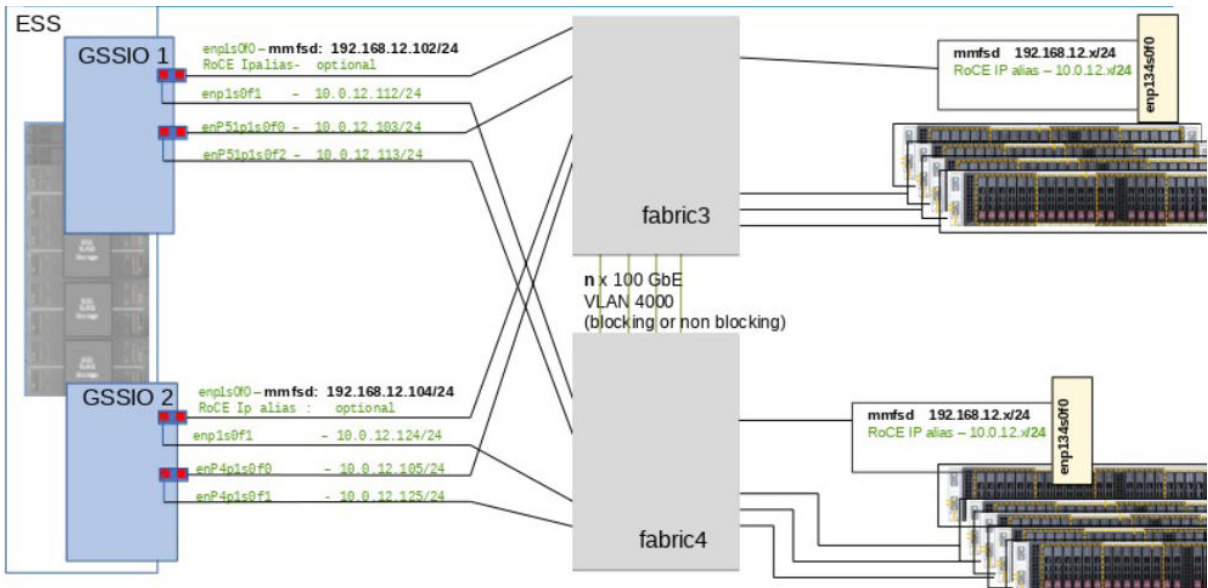


Figure 31. Showing configuration without bond

As shown in the figure, for network topology without bond, it is essential to have one IP address per network port. On the adapter that has the **mmfsd** IP address that is configured, additional RoCE IP address nor alias is needed until nodes in your cluster are able to communicate to this **mmfsd** IP address. You can configure as many aliases as the operating system version supports. You need one IP per adapter and RoCE can also use the existing IP, which is also used for TCP/IP traffic.

Running a configuration without bonds allows to later in the GPFS configuration, one can enhance the whole configuration by fabric numbers. By using such configuration, traffic on the ISL (inter-switch links) might be avoided.

**Note:** The adapters in a RoCE enabled environment can run TCP/IP traffic and RDMA traffic simultaneously.

## MTU consideration

RDMA was first introduced on InfiniBand networks. RDMA over InfiniBand supports MTU (maximum transmission unit) sizes from 256 up to 4096 Bytes.

It is recommended to adjust the MTU to jumbo frames, which is 9000 Bytes. Adjust this setting on all adapters and all nodes, communicating in your clusters. If you need to communicate with external nodes in remote networks and you cannot be sure that the path through the network supports MTU 9000 Bytes end-to-end, make sure that MTU Path Discovery is enabled. The MTU Path Discovery is enabled by default on Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

**Tip:** MTU can be set for the bond only when it is being getting created by using the `--create-bond` switch. Once the bond has been created, the MTU cannot be modified by using the **essgennetwork** command. The **essgennetwork** command does not support to reconfigure the MTU for an existing bond or an interface. A user must use the **nmcli** command or manually edit the `ifcfg` network configuration file and change the MTU value. Once MTU changes are applied, reload the new connection configuration by using the **nmcli config load** command and restart the bond or the interface by using the **ifdown <interface\_name>** command followed by **ifup <interface\_name>**.

## CLI reference

The CLI reference for **essgennetworks** is shown as follows:

```
# essgennetworks --help
usage: essgennetworks [-h] -N NODE-LIST [--prefix PREFIX] [--suffix SUFFIX]
                    [--interface INTERFACE] [--assignip ASSIGNIP]
                    [--create-bd | --delete-bond | --add-slave]
                    [--gateway GATEWAY] [--bond BONDNAME] [--miimon MIIMON]
                    [--vlan VLAN]
                    [--mode {balance-rr,active-backup,balance-xor,broadcast,802.3ad,balance-
tlb,balance-alb}]
                    [--hash-policy {layer2+3,layer3+4}] [--netmask CRID]
                    [--IPoIB] [--query] [--enableRDMA] [--enableRoCE]
                    [--configureRouteForRoCE]
                    [--roceRoutingTableId ROCEROUTINGTABLEID]
                    [--roceRoutingTableName ROCEROUTINGTABLENAME]
                    [--verbsPortsFabric VERBSPORTSFABRIC]
                    [--devices DEVICES] [--change {InfiniBand,Ethernet}]
                    [--port {P1,P2}] [--mtu {1500,2044,4092,9000}]
                    [--verbose]

optional arguments:
  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
  -N NODE-LIST          Provide a list of nodes for bonded network creation.
  --prefix PREFIX       Provide hostname prefix. Use = between --prefix and
                        value if the value starts with -.
  --suffix SUFFIX       Provide hostname suffix. Use = between --suffix and
                        value if the value starts with -.
  --interface INTERFACE Provide list of interfaces for bond. Default to all
                        high speed interface if not provided.
  --assignip ASSIGNIP   Assign IP address to provide interface in --interface
                        switch.
  --create-bond         Create bonded interface.
  --delete-bond         Delete bonded interface.
  --add-slave           Add slave interfaces to bond.
  --gateway GATEWAY     Provide gateway for the network. By default it will
                        not configure any gateway on network interface until
                        specified.
  --bond BONDNAME       Provide name of the bond. Default bond0.
  --miimon MIIMON       Provide miimon value for bond. Default is miimon=100.
                        Consider miimon=1000 if you are planning to use bond
                        for RoCE.
  --vlan VLAN           Set VLAN_ID for the interface or bond.
```

```

--mode {balance-rr,active-backup,balance-xor,broadcast,802.3ad,balance-tlb,balance-alb}
    Provide bonding mode. Default is 802.3ad
    (recommended).
--hash-policy {layer2+3,layer3+4}
    Provide xmit hash policy for 802.3ad and balanced-xor.
    Default is layer2+3.
--netmask CRID
    Provide CIDR (netmask) for the interface default /24.
--IPoIB
    Enable IPoIB (IP over InfiniBand, in case InfiniBand
    network present. By default False. It will also
    enabler RDMA for InfiniBand.
--query
    Query the port type of the Mellanox Interface.
--enableRDMA
    Enable RDMA over the InfiniBand Network.
--enableRoCE
    Enable RoCE over the Ethernet Network.
--configureRouteForRoCE
    Configure routing for RoCE over the Ethernet
    Network. Will be used if same subnet has been used for
    different RoCE interfaces.
--roceRoutingTableId ROCEROUTINGTABLEID
    Routing table ID for the RoCE over the Ethernet
    Network.
--roceRoutingTableName ROCEROUTINGTABLENAME
    Routing table Name for the RoCE over the Ethernet
    Network.
--verbsPortsFabric VERBSPORTSFABRIC
    Name of the Mellanox verbs port fabric. For Example: 1
    or 2. It will be automatically added to the verbs
    port.
--devices DEVICES
    Name of the Mellanox device name. 'all' will query all
    devices attached to node. Provide comma separated
    device names to query more than one device at a given
    time.
--change {InfiniBand,Ethernet}
    change the Mellanox port type to InfiniBand or
    Ethernet and vice versa.
--port {P1,P2}
    Port number of the Mellanox VPI card.
--mtu {1500,2044,4092,9000}
    Provide mtu of bond network. For Ethernet, 1500 or
    9000 MTU allowed (Default: 1500). For InfiniBand, 2044
    or 4092 MTU allowed (Default: 2044).
--verbose
    Provides more verbosity.

This program can be used to create a bonded network. Example: essgennetworks
-G ess_x86_64

```

## Bond configuration

For RoCEv2 to work properly, all interfaces need an Ipv6 local link address and an IPv4 address.

Configuring bond interfaces is not needed to run RoCE. If you do not need a bonded TCP/IP interface, you can proceed with next section.

In case you want to have your IP interfaces protected against port failures, run the following steps to configure the bonds.

**Note:** If you do not need the daemon IP address to be protected by a bond, skip this step.

**Note:** To configure RoCE over bond, the bond must be created prior by using **essgennetwork** command. If a bond is created by using more than two physical network interfaces, then the existing bond must be broken and recreated by using same physical card. For example, if a bond is created by using four ports and two physical cards, then the bond must be broken and a new bond must be created by using two ports with the same physical card.

Refer to the following example of enabling RoCE over bond.

1. Create a bond by using two interfaces by using the following command:

```

# essgens -N essio51 --suffix=-ce --interface enp1s0f0,enp1s0f0f1 --create-bond --hash-
policy layer3+4 --bond bond0 --mtu 9000 --miimon 1000
2021-10-25T03:30:24.978336 [INFO] Starting network generation...
2021-10-25T03:30:25.040319 [INFO] nodelist: essio51
2021-10-25T03:30:25.040386 [INFO] suffix used for network hostname: -ce
2021-10-25T03:30:25.040430 [INFO] Bond will be created using --hash-policy layer3+4 which is
required to configure RoCE over Bond.
2021-10-25T03:30:25.040464 [INFO] Bond will be created using miimon 1000
2021-10-25T03:30:25.040495 [INFO] Bond will be created with --mtu 9000. Make sure switch is
configured to use 9000 MTU or set to auto negotiate.

```

```

2021-10-25T03:30:25.040526 [WARN] Make sure switch is configured to handle Jumbo frame
before creating bond.
2021-10-25T03:30:25.040556 [WARN] Without Jubmo frame configuration at switch may result to
network outage.
2021-10-25T03:30:25.040586 [WARN] Consider testing once configured. Example: ping -s 9000 -c
10 TARGET_NODE-hs
2021-10-25T03:30:50.356662 [INFO] Interface(s) available on node essio51-ce
2021-10-25T03:30:50.356748 [INFO] Considered interface(s) of node essio51-ce are
['enp1s0f0'] with RDMA Port ['mlx5_0'] for this operation
2021-10-25T03:30:50.360236 [INFO] Checking for IP address assignment on node(s)
2021-10-25T03:30:50.364861 [INFO] essio51-ce: Current IP Address: IP not assigned
2021-10-25T03:30:50.367996 [INFO] Creating network bond bond0 on node essio51-ce with IP
Address 192.168.2.51
2021-10-25T03:30:50.670300 [WARN] essio51-ce: Bond created with one slave interface
2021-10-25T03:30:51.734465 [INFO] Network bond bond0 on node essio51-ce with IP Address
192.168.2.51 has been created successfully.
2021-10-25T03:30:51.738006 [INFO] Network Bond with name bond0 is UP and connected at node
essio51-ce
2021-10-25T03:30:51.738055 [INFO] Bond creation complete. Reloading connections.

```

**Note:** A bond is created by using the hash policy layer3+4.

**Tip:** MTU can only be set for the bond while it's getting created using the `--create-bond` switch. Once the bond has been created, the MTU cannot be modified by using the **essgennetwork** command. The **essgennetwork** command does not support to reconfigure the MTU for an existing bond or an interface. A user must use the **nmcli** command or manually edit the `ifcfg` network configuration file and change the MTU value. Once MTU changes are applied, reload the new connection configuration by using the **nmcli config load** command and restart the bond or the interface by using the **ifdown <interface\_name>** command followed by **ifup <interface\_name>**.

2. Once the bond is created, then the bond0 is used to enable the RoCE by using the following command:

```

# essgennetworks -N ems5 --suffix=-ce --bond bond0 --enableRoCE
2021-10-25T02:13:32.989606 [INFO] Starting network generation...
2021-10-25T02:13:33.053310 [INFO] nodelist: ems5
2021-10-25T02:13:33.053370 [INFO] suffix used for network hostname: -ce
2021-10-25T02:14:26.325569 [INFO] Interface(s) available on node ems5-ce
2021-10-25T02:14:26.325636 [INFO] Considered interface(s) of node ems5-ce are ['bond0'] with
RDMA Port ['mlx5_bond_0'] for this operation
2021-10-25T02:14:26.693602 [INFO] Supported Mellanox RoCE card found at node ems5
2021-10-25T02:14:26.697197 [INFO] Supported version of Mellanox OFED found at node ems5-ce
2021-10-25T02:14:40.007004 [INFO] Bond validation passed and found bonds bond0 has been
created using same physical network adapter at node ems5-ce
2021-10-25T02:14:40.011375 [INFO] Bond MTU validation passed and found bonds MTU set to 9000
at node ems5-ce
2021-10-25T02:14:40.015525 [INFO] Interface bond0 have the IPv4 Address assigned at node
ems5-ce
2021-10-25T02:14:40.019593 [INFO] Interface bond0 have the IPv6 Address assigned at node
ems5-ce
2021-10-25T02:14:40.019648 [INFO] Enabling RDMA for Ports ['mlx5_bond_0']
2021-10-25T02:14:48.370397 [INFO] Enabled RDMA i.e. RoCE over Ethernet using bond bond0
2021-10-25T02:14:48.370446 [INFO] Please recycle the GPFS daemon on those nodes where RoCE
has been enabled.

```

**Note:** GPFS daemon must be recycled to make the RoCE configuration working. Once daemon recycled, you can run the **mmdia -network** command to check whether the RDMA is enabled over Ethernet.

Advantages and disadvantages of using bond with RoCE:

- A bonded interface protects against port and cable failures.
- For running RDMA, all ports of the bonded interface need to be on one, the same, physical PCI adapter. So, an adapter failure is not covered such configurations.
- Creating bonds over multiple switches makes MLAG configuration mandatory in a network, which can cause unbalanced network utilization in the fabric.

## Regular IP interface configuration

For RoCEv2 to work properly, all interfaces need an Ipv6 local link address and an IPv4 address. Configure all interfaces intended to use for RoCE communication, as shown in the following example.

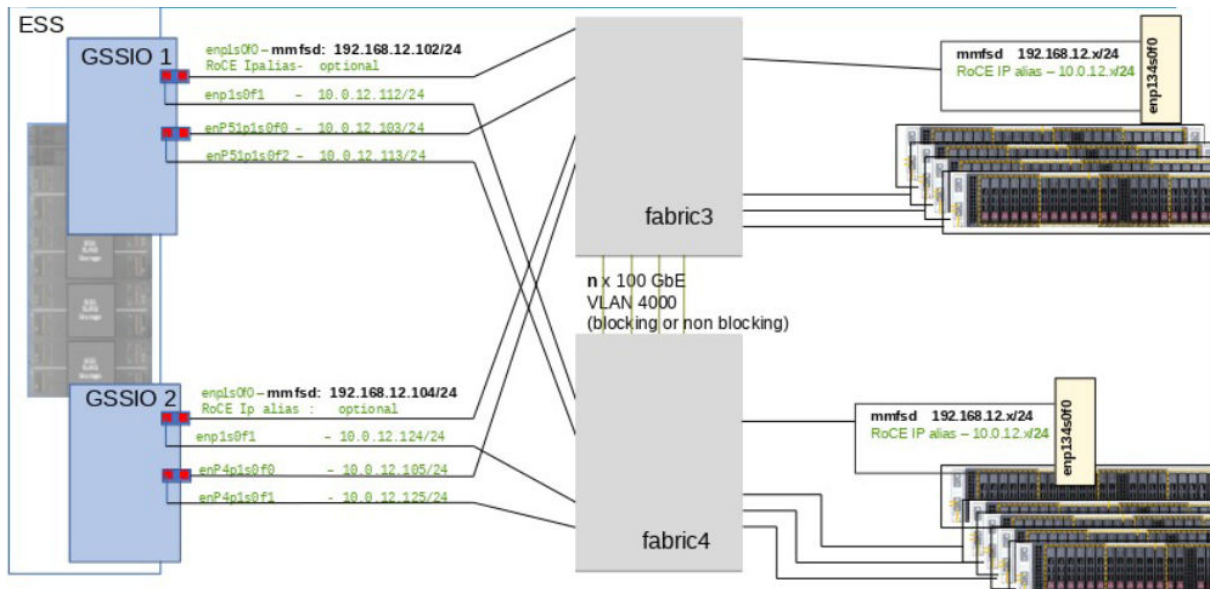


Figure 32. Configuring interfaces

As highlighted in black, make sure that only one IP interface has an IP address for the **mmfs** daemon communication. All other interfaces need to be on a different subnet.

1. Assign IPv4 to high-speed interface by using the following command:

```
# essgennetworks -N essio51 --suffix=-ce --interface enP48p1s0f0 --assignip 192.168.4.51
2021-10-25T04:40:58.779195 [INFO] Starting network generation...
2021-10-25T04:40:58.842575 [INFO] nodelist: essio51
2021-10-25T04:40:58.842642 [INFO] suffix used for network hostname: -ce
2021-10-25T04:41:22.178448 [INFO] Interface(s) available on node essio51-ce
2021-10-25T04:41:22.178533 [INFO] Considered interface(s) of node essio51-ce are
['enP48p1s0f0'] with RDMA Port ['Inbuilt'] for this operation

2021-10-25T04:41:22.178591 [INFO] Checking for IP address assignment on node(s)
2021-10-25T04:41:22.182983 [INFO] essio51-ce: Current IP Address: IP not assigned

2021-10-25T04:41:22.183057 [INFO] Interface name enP48p1s0f0 consider for IP assignment with
IP address 192.168.4.51 for node essio51-ce
2021-10-25T04:41:22.308265 [INFO] Successfully assigned IP Address to interface enP48p1s0f0
at node essio51-ce
2021-10-25T04:41:22.506151 [INFO] IP Assignment successful. Reloading connections.
[PASS] essgennetworks passed successfully
```

2. If you are using only one subnet, no need to enable routing. For multiple networks in same subnet, must configure routing to route the RoCE traffic by using all subnets. To enable routing for a subnet, see the “Routing configurations” on page 135 section. In the following example, only one subnet 192.168.4.0/24 is used. Therefore, you can enable RoCE by using the **-enableRoCE** command with the **-interface** switch. However, it is safe to enable routing even only one subnet is in use, by issuing the following command:

```
# essgennetworks -N essio51 --suffix=-ce --interface enP48p1s0f0 --enableRoCE
2021-10-25T04:43:15.983035 [INFO] Starting network generation...
2021-10-25T04:43:16.045174 [INFO] nodelist: essio51
2021-10-25T04:43:16.045243 [INFO] suffix used for network hostname: -ce
2021-10-25T04:43:39.040751 [INFO] Interface(s) available on node essio51-ce
2021-10-25T04:43:39.040829 [INFO] Considered interface(s) of node essio51-ce are
['enP48p1s0f0'] with RDMA Port ['mlx5_2'] for this operation
2021-10-25T04:43:39.348322 [WARN] MTU is NOT set to 9000 for interface enP48p1s0f0 at node
essio51. It's advisable to set MTU as 9000 for better performance.
2021-10-25T04:43:39.348381 [WARN] Interface MTU NOT set to 9000 at node essio51-ce
2021-10-25T04:43:39.348413 [WARN] Please re-configure the interface with --mtu 9000 and make
sure switch is also configured to use --mtu 9000 i.e. Jumbo frame for better performance at
node essio51-ce
2021-10-25T04:43:39.352619 [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f0 have the IPv4 Address assigned at
node essio51-ce
2021-10-25T04:43:39.356763 [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f0 have the IPv6 Address assigned at
node essio51-ce
2021-10-25T04:43:39.356817 [INFO] Enabling RDMA for Ports ['mlx5_2']
```

```
2021-10-25T04:43:45.409405 [INFO] Enabled RDMA i.e. RoCE over Ethernet using Ethernet
interfaces enP48p1s0f0
2021-10-25T04:43:45.409464 [INFO] Please recycle the GPFS daemon on those nodes where RoCE
has been enabled.
```

**Note:** If you want to enable RoCE for bond and interfaces both, then use **-interface** and **-bond** switch with the **-enableRoCE** to enable it.

GPFS daemon must be recycled to make the RoCE configuration working. Once daemon recycled you can run the **mmdiag -network** command to check whether the RDMA is enabled over Ethernet.

**Tip:** The multiple verbsPortsFabric configuration is not supported as of now by using the **essgennnetwork** command. For example, if a user wants to configure fabric for bond as "/1/1" and for interfaces "/1/2", then the **essgennnetwork** command does not have the option to configure it. The user needs to use the **mmchconfig verbsPorts="mlx5\_bond\_0/1/1 mlx5\_2/1/2 mlx5\_3/1/2"** command to enable the multiple fabrics for RoCE. GPFS daemon must be recycled after the **mmchconfig verbsPorts** parameter is used.

## Routing configurations

In [Figure 32 on page 134](#), the **mmfsd** communication runs in the 192.168.12.0/24 network. All other Mellanox cards interfaces are highlighted in green and configured to be in the subnet 10.10.10.x/24. All interfaces are intended to use for RDMA communication, while only the IP addresses in 192.168.12.0/24 network are used for TCP/IP communication.

With current IBM Spectrum Scale releases, only one IP address per node is supported for communication to the **mmfs** daemon's network.

To scale out over multiple ports, RoCE can be used. But according to the definition of OFED standards, each RDMA interface needs to have an IP address to maintain the connection.

Theoretically, to use multiple interfaces, need to configure multiple subnets. It is complex for larger environments and technically not needed. It is possible to configure all interfaces that are intended to be used for RDMA into one separate subnet.

As a limitation of the Red Hat Enterprise Linux kernel, multiple interfaces to the same subnets are complex. When you have more than one interface per subnet on a node, answering arp requests, selecting rules for outgoing IP traffic, and other complexities need to be reconsidered. To resolve such issues, you must add some special routing tables, described in [routing table entries](#). You need to specify routing entries for each interface and for all subnets, where you have more than one interface connected.

In example, each IO server node has four interfaces that are connected to the same physical network. These interfaces need to get an IP address in a different IP-range(subnet) than the **mmfsd** but they are all in the same network. Refer to the following figure for topology overview.

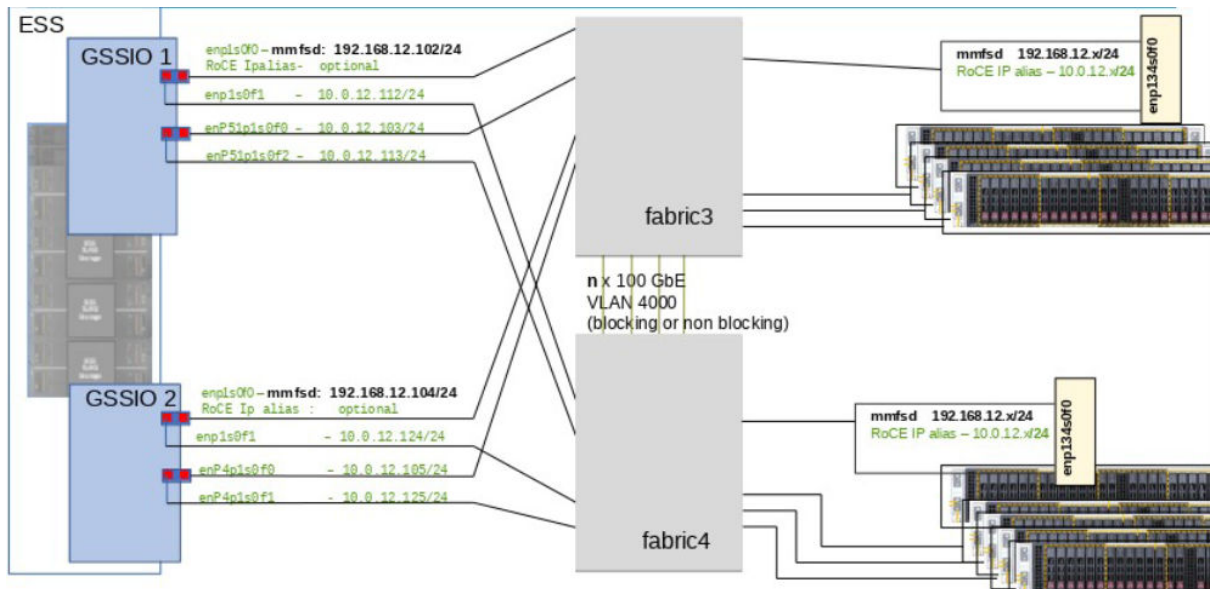


Figure 33. Displaying topology overview

For each green marked interface, a routing entry is needed.

1. To enable routing for each RoCE interface, issue the following command:

```
# essgennetworks -N essio51 --configureRouteForRoCE --roceRoutingTableId 101 --
roceRoutingTableName t1 --interface enP48p1s0f0
2021-10-25T04:51:53.048486 [INFO] Starting network generation...
2021-10-25T04:51:53.111121 [INFO] nodelist: essio51
2021-10-25T04:52:13.897913 [INFO] Interface(s) available on node essio51
2021-10-25T04:52:13.897991 [INFO] Considered interface(s) of node essio51 are
['enP48p1s0f0'] with RDMA Port ['mlx5_2'] for this operation
2021-10-25T04:52:14.202172 [WARN] MTU is NOT set to 9000 for interface enP48p1s0f0 at node
essio51. It's advisable to set MTU as 9000 for better performance.
2021-10-25T04:52:14.202235 [WARN] Interface MTU NOT set to 9000 at node essio51
2021-10-25T04:52:14.202268 [WARN] Please re-configure the interface with --mtu 9000 and make
sure switch is also configured to use --mtu 9000 i.e. Jumbo frame for better performance at
node essio51
2021-10-25T04:52:14.206459 [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f0 have the IPv4 Address assigned at
node essio51
2021-10-25T04:52:14.210723 [INFO] Interface enP48p1s0f0 have the IPv6 Address assigned at
node essio51
2021-10-25T04:52:14.225432 [INFO] RoCE routing validation passes.
2021-10-25T04:52:14.225488 [INFO] Setting UP routing for interface RDMA for Interface
['enP48p1s0f0'] at node essio51
2021-10-25T04:52:14.228225 [INFO] Successfully added routing id and it's table name
inside /etc/iproute2/rt_tables at node essio51
2021-10-25T04:52:14.672155 [INFO] Successfully configured route for interface enP48p1s0f0 at
node essio51
2021-10-25T04:52:14.672219 [INFO] Routing configuration for subnet has configured
successfully.
```

2. Following is the routing table entry after previous step:

```
# ip r
10.111.222.100/30 dev enP1p8s0f3 proto kernel scope link src 10.111.222.101 metric 101
linkdown
192.168.2.0/24 dev bond0 proto kernel scope link src 192.168.2.51 metric 300
192.168.4.0/24 dev enP48p1s0f0 proto kernel scope link src 192.168.4.51 metric 104
192.168.15.0/24 dev enP1p8s0f0 proto kernel scope link src 192.168.15.51 metric 100
```

Repeat same steps for all the interface to configure multiple RoCE interfaces.

**Note:** sysctl settings:

In addition to the interface scripts, you need system-wide settings that are managed by sysctl. Depending on the ESS version in use, a customized sysctl setting is available by a tuned profile, which is named as scale. You need to edit the file /etc/tuned/scale/tuned.conf. For any other client node in your cluster, you can deploy the same sysctl configuration file.

Make sure the following `sysctl` settings are applied:

```
net.ipv6.conf.all.disable_ipv6=0
net.ipv6.conf.default.disable_ipv6=0
```

**Note:** The IPv6 configuration maybe enabled by the default ESS deployment process.

Validation:

Run **`mmlsconfig`** to validate the `verbsPorts` configuration:

```
# mmlsconfig
[ems5-ce,essio51-ce,essio52-ce]
verbsRdma enable
verbsRdmaCm enable
verbsRdmaSend yes
[ems5-ce,essio52-ce]
verbsPorts mlx5_bond_0
[essio51-ce]
verbsPorts mlx5_2
```

In addition, you can run the **`mmdia`** **`-network`** and check for the `verbsRDMA` connection.



---

## Appendix T. Enabling goconserver

To configure manually the console server, you need to perform the following steps on the EMS. By default, conserver is setup automatically during deployment.

To configure the console server, you need to perform the following steps on the EMS (that must be on 6.1.6.0 or later):

1. To configure goconserver, issue the following command:

```
# esscongocfg --task configure
```

2. To check whether nodes are configured, issue the following command on EMS:

```
# esscongocfg --task list
```

3. After a system is added to the console server, do not use the IPMI console to connect the serial over LAN (SOL) to configured nodes. Access the nodes by issuing the following command:

```
# cngo console node_name
```

In addition to access the console from EMS, the EMS keeps a file for each node with all the output of each server on the `/var/log/goconserver/nodes` directory. By issuing the following commands, you can get log files:

```
# ls -ltr /var/log/goconserver/nodes
```

A sample output is as follows:

```
total 28
-rw----- 1 root root 3818 Aug 12 08:11 gssems2-new.log
-rw----- 1 root root 3984 Aug 12 08:11 gssio3-new.log
-rw----- 1 root root 4150 Aug 12 08:11 gssio4-new.log
-rw----- 1 root root 7755 Aug 12 08:21 essio3.log
-rw----- 1 root root 100 Aug 12 08:22 essio4.log
```

For more information, see [Configuring goconserver](#).



---

## Appendix U. POWER8 to POWER9 EMS container conversion

The topic describes the process of moving from the POWER8 to the POWER9 EMS regarding consolidation of the containers. The current requirement is to decommission the POWER8 EMS if you are in an IBM Spectrum Scale 5.1.x.x environment. It is suggested to consolidate to a single POWER9 EMS. It reduces complexity (single GUI, single deployment environment, more simple networking) and is the tested environment.

Requirements for POWER8 to the POWER9 EMS container conversion.

- Maintain Quorum by initially adding the POWER9 EMS to the POWER8 EMS environment.
- Clean up and shut down the POWER8 EMS.
- Reconfigure the GUI and collector.  
For stretch clustering assign two or more collectors, one for each cluster to set up GUI correctly. For more information about collectors, see the *Configuring multiple collectors* section in *IBM Storage Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

**Note:** Therefore, in the most cases, for larger environments EMS is needed for quorum add the POWER9 EMS first.

Refer to the following steps for POWER8 to the POWER9 EMS container conversion.

**Note:** These steps are the broad level steps, for full commands, see *Quick Deployment Guide*.

POWER9 EMS steps.

1. Code 20 the POWER9 EMS (clean hardware, management, and FSP networks set). POWER9 EMS can talk over the management network to the other nodes in the cluster with high-speed cables run.
2. Using a supported POWER9 container (any can work) deployment the container, run config load, config check, and EMS update by using the (**essrun config load | check | update --offline**).
3. Create high-speed network bonds by using (**essrun network**).
4. Add EMS to cluster by using the **essrun cluster --add-ems** command.
5. The POWER9 EMS is now part of the cluster and can be a quorum node. Use the **mmlscluster** to confirm.
6. Set up node as a second collector node, as shown in the following example:

```
mmperfmon config show
mmperfmon config update { [--collectors Collector-Node[,CollectorNode...] ]
                        [ --config-file InputFile]
```

POWER8 EMS steps.

1. Remove collector attribute from the node.
2. Shutdown ESA; shutdown GUI.
3. Remove node from cluster.
4. Shutdown GPFS.
5. Remove OFED.
6. Remove GPFS.
7. Remove xCAT.
8. Run cleanup script (removes keys, logs, and config files).
9. Clear ifcfg files.

After you complete these steps, POWER8 EMS is no longer in use.

Optional: Can use script to secure wipe boot drives.

Final POWER9 steps.

1. Reenter the container and run GUI config setup (sets up hosts.py).

- a. To configure GUI hardware monitoring from the container, issue the following command:

```
essrun -N <nodes separated by comma:ems1,essio1,essio2> gui --configure
```

- b. To create GUI user (from EMS host, not from the container), issue the following command from EMS host:

```
/usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/cli/mkuser admin -g SecurityAdmin
```

- c. Run the following command on the EMS node.

```
mssql init
```

- d. Issue the following command to start GUI:

```
systemctl restart gpfsgui
```

For more information about GUI configuration, see [Chapter 4, “ESS new deployment instructions,”](#) on page 23.

2. Rerun GUI config (can need to wipe the GUI database clean prior).

```
systemctl start gpfsgui
```

Log in to GUI and reconfigure.

**Note:** Ensure that you have the rack elevation of the hardware installed.

3. Exit the container and re ESA config for call home. For more information about configuring call home, see [Configuring call home](#).

The following example lists the steps of cleaning the GUI database:

```
# cleanup GUI db
#!/bin/bash
echo "Stopping GUI..."
systemctl stop gpfsgui
echo "Cleaning database..."
psql postgres postgres -c "drop schema fsc cascade;"
echo "Cleaning CCR files..."
mmccr fdel _gui.settings
mmccr fdel _gui.user.repo
mmccr fdel _gui.keystore.settings
mmccr fdel _gui.policysettings
mmccr fdel _gui.dashboards
mmccr fdel _gui.notification
mmccr fdel _gui_jobs
mmccr fdel _gui
echo "Cleaning local CCR files..."
rm -f /var/lib/mmfs/gui/*.json*
echo "Cleaning logs..."
rm -rf /var/log/cnlog/mgtsrv/*
echo "Starting GUI..."
mssql init
systemctl start gpfsgui
echo "Finished"
```

---

## Appendix V. Summary of ESS deployment scenarios

ESS 3500 does not update the firmware automatically during the deployment. You must issue the **mmchfirmware** command to update the firmware (offline or online).

### Starting a container

1. Populate /etc/hosts correctly.
2. Fix passwordless between all clusters or ESS nodes (manually).
3. Extract the installation package.
4. Start the container.
5. Issue the following command on all ESS nodes:

```
# essrun -N allESSNodes(management hostnames) config load
```

Ensure that ESS nodes do not have any issues.

### Deploying a new ESS node

1. Complete steps in the [“Starting a container” on page 143](#) section.
2. Check whether any ESS nodes has any issues. If any issue is found, fix it.

```
# essrun -N allESSNodes(management hostnames) config check
```

3. Create network bonds.

```
# essrun -N allESSNodes(management hostnames) network --suffix=YourSuffix
```

You can create network bonds manually from any ESS node by using by the **essgennetworks** command. For more information, see the [essgennetworks command](#), in the Elastic Storage System: Command Reference.

4. Create a GPFS cluster.

```
# essrun -N allESSIONodes(management hostnames) cluste
```

- Ensure that you use only I/O nodes (ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, or ESS 3500). Do not use EMS or protocol nodes.
- You can use the `--suffix=YourSuffix` option in the command.

5. Check whether any nodes have any issues and fix them.

```
# essrun -N allESSNodes(management hostnames) config check
```

6. Add EMS to the GPFS cluster.

```
# essrun -N oneESSIONodeInCluster(management hostname) cluster --add-ems EMSNode(management hostname)
```

- Ensure that you use only one node in the cluster for the `-N` option.
- You can use the `--suffix=YourSuffix` option in the command.

7. Create a file system.

```
# essrun -N allESSIONodes(management hostnames) filesystem
```

- Enure that you use only I/O nodes (ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, or ESS 3500).
- You can use the `--suffix=YourSuffix` option in the command.

For more information, see the [essrun command](#), in the Elastic Storage System: Command Reference.

## Adding a new building block to an existent cluster

1. Complete steps in the “Starting a container” on page 143 section.
  - a. Include a new building block in /etc/hosts.
  - b. Include the new building block in the **allESSNodes** commands.
2. Check whether any ESS nodes have any issues. If any issues is found, fix it.

```
# essrun -N allESSNodes(management hostnames) config check
```

Include the new building block or blocks in the **allESSNodes** commands.

3. Add a building block or blocks to the cluster.

```
# essrun -N oneESSIONodeInCluster(management hostname) cluster --add-nodes  
newESSIONodes(management hostname)
```

- You can use the `--suffix=YourSuffix` option in the command.
  - Use only one type of building block in the `--add-nodes` option. You can use more than two nodes but both must have the same node type.
  - Issue this command, if you are adding different node types.
4. Decide how you want to use the new building block or blocks.
    - a. Add a new building block to an existing file system.

```
# essrun -N newESSIONodes vdisk --name someVdiskName(default is essfs)
```

You can use multiple flags in the command. For example, `--bs/--code/--suffix`.

Ensure that you use the same BlockSize and RaidCode as an existent file system.

You can use `--extra-vars "--nsd-usage dataOnly --storage-pool system"` or any other `--nsd-usage/--storage-pool` combination.

Ensure that only one building block is supported to create vdisk.

- b. Execute in oneESSIONodeInCluster:

```
mmvdisk filesystem add --fs YourExistentFSName --vdisk NewVdiskCreated
```

Check the output of the previous command.

Repeat these steps, you want to add more than one building blocks.

5. Create a file system in the new building block or blocks.

```
# essrun -N allNewESSIONodes(management hostnames) filesystem --name someFSName(default is  
essfs)
```

- Ensure that you use only I/O nodes (ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, or ESS 3500).
- You can use the `--suffix=YourSuffix` option in the command.

For more information, see the [essrun command](#), in the Elastic Storage System: Command Reference.

6. Create recovery groups only in the new building block(s).

```
# essrun -N allNewESSIONodes(management hostnames) filesystem --rg-only
```

- Ensure that you use only I/O nodes (ESS 5000, ESS 3000, ESS 3200, or ESS 3500).
- You can use the `--suffix=YourSuffix` option in the command.

For more information, see the [essrun command](#), in the Elastic Storage System: Command Reference.

## Updating ESS online

1. Complete steps in the [“Starting a container” on page 143](#) section.
2. Check whether any nodes have any issues.

```
# essrun -N allESSNodes(management hostnames) config check
```

3. Update ESS.

```
# essrun -N allESSNodes(management hostnames) update
```

Complete steps in the [“Starting a container” on page 143](#) section.

Online update requires Cluster and RecoveryGroups to be created, otherwise use Offline update.

### --serial option

The `--serial 1` option is default behavior for online updates. When this option is selected online update is done one by one from one “side” of the building block(s), and then one by one of the other “side” of the building block(s).

### --serial n

If more than one building block is useful, it will do `n` by `n` from one “side” of the building blocks, and then `n` by `n` of the other “side” of the building blocks.

### --serial all

If you have more than one building block, it will do ALL nodes from one “side” of the building blocks, and then ALL nodes from the other “side” of the building blocks.

### --no-fw-update

- Skips the firmware level update, which updated by using the **mmchfirmware** command.
- OS, Kernel, GPFS, and OFED will be updated.
- Run the **mmchfirmware --type drives/storage-enclosure** command on nodes that require firmware updates.

### --no-check

This option will avoid to stop between “sides”. When this option is selected, you are not asked whether you are ready to continue with “side B”, which is the second half of the building block(s).

Usually there is a stop in the middle for safety checks, you can manually run some health checks in the updated nodes.

### --ofed-only

This option is not supported when you do online update.

## Updating ESS offline

1. Complete steps in the [“Starting a container” on page 143](#) section.
2. Check whether any ESS nodes have any issues.

```
# essrun -N allESSNodes(management hostnames) config check
```

3. Update ESS offline.

```
# essrun -N allESSNodes(management hostnames) update --offline
```

- Offline update does not require Cluster and RecoveryGroups to be created.
- If GPFS is active on some nodes, shut down those nodes. This might create quorum issues.

### --no-fw-update

Skip firmware level update by using the **mmchfirmware** command only if GPFS cluster is created.

OS, Kernel, GPFS, and OFED will be updated.

Run the **mmchfirmware --type drives/storage-enclosure** command on nodes that require firmware updates.

**--ofed-only**

forces installation or update of OFED.

OS, Kernel, GPFS are not updated.

**--serial**

This option is ignored in offline update.

- The default behavior for offline update is to update ALL nodes that are defined in the -N option.

For more information, see the [essrun command](#), in the Elastic Storage System: Command Reference.

## Appendix W. The IPv6 support for the ESS cluster creation on a high-speed network

From ESS 6.1.6.0, the **essgennetwork** command can configure an IPv6 address on high-speed interfaces. These high-speed interfaces can be used to create a future-ready ESS cluster by using the IPv6 address over the high-speed network.

No updates are needed in the **essrun** command to use the IPv6 address during the ESS cluster creation. The **essrun** command automatically selects an IPv6 address to create a cluster, if IPv6 addresses are present in the `/etc/hosts` file.

Before you issue the **essrun cluster** command to create an ESS cluster by using an IPv6 address over the high-speed network, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- All necessary IPv6 addresses and a hostname must be present in the `/etc/hosts` file.
- IPv6 addresses must be assigned to all high-speed interfaces. You can use the bonded interface with the assigned IPv6 address as a part of the ESS cluster.
- The high-speed interface must not be configured with an IPv6 link local address. For example, an IPv6 address that starts from `fe80::` must not be used. The interface must be assigned an IP address that can be pinged between nodes. An example of IPv6 addresses is as follows:

```
2001:700:570f:30::1 essems1-hs.gpfs.net essems1-hs
2001:700:570f:30::2 essio1-hs.gpfs.net essio1-hs
2001:700:570f:30::3 essio2-hs.gpfs.net essio2-hs
2001:700:570f:30::4 essprt01-hs.gpfs.net essprt01-hs
2001:700:570f:30::202 essio1-vm1-hs.gpfs.net essio1-vm1-hs
2001:700:570f:30::203 essio2-vm1-hs.gpfs.net essio2-vm1-hs
```

- The **essrun cluster** command must use the IPv6 hostname alias in the `-N` option during the cluster creation.

1. The following **essgennetwork** command assigns IPv6 addresses to interfaces:

```
# essgennetworks -N essio51 --assign-ip 2001:700:570f:30::1 --interface enP51p1s0f0
[INFO] Starting network generation...
[INFO] nodelist: essio51
```

An IPv6 address is assigned to the `enP51p1s0s0` interface.

2. For a bonded interface, during a bond creation an IP address can be configured by using the following command. By default, only IPv4 addresses are considered for the bond creation.

```
# essgennetworks -N essio2 --suffix=-hs --create-bond --IPoIB --ip-version v6
[INFO] Starting network generation...
[INFO] nodelist: essio2
```

The **essgennetwork --assign-ip** command can also be used on the bonded interface, if the IPv6 address was not used during the bond creation. This switch assigns the IPv6 address to the created bonded interface.

3. When an IPv6 address is assigned to the interfaces or bond, issue the **essrun** command to create an ESS cluster by using the IPv6 address over high-speed network. These hostnames must be used that are used IPv6 alias in the `/etc/hosts` file.

**Restriction:** The IPv6 support is available only for the GPFS admin or daemon network. The IPv6 support is not available on management, campus, and FSP networks. The IPv6 support for these interfaces needs to be configured manually.



## Appendix X. Multi-rail over TCP support in ESS

ESS provides basic multi-rail over TCP (MROT) support. You can find a new switch named -MROT in the **essgennetwork** command. This switch can be used with the --assign-ip switch to assign an IP address to the specified interface for MROT.

After an IP address is assigned, configure MROT on an ESS cluster. See the *Configuring Multi-Rail over TCP (MROT)* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

**Restriction:** The **essgennetwork** command cannot configure the MROT end-to-end. This command assigns only an IP address the specified interface.

**RoCE consideration:** MROT and RoCE coexist on the same ESS cluster at a given point of time.

MROT was introduced in [IBM Storage Scale 5.1.8.x](#). The MROT feature enhanced the network resiliency.

The MROT feature enables the concurrent use of multiple network interfaces and subnets. With MROT, the subnets attribute can be used to establish fault tolerance or automatic failover. All the IP addresses which are defined in the subnets attribute are used to establish connections with the nodes within the cluster. For more information, see the *Configuring Multi-Rail over TCP (MROT)* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Example

```
# essgennetworks -N essio51 --suffix=-ce --interface enP48p1s0f0 --MROT 192.168.3.51 --
netmask /24 --mtu 9000
[INFO]Starting network generation...
[INFO]nodelist: essio51
[INFO]suffix used for network hostname:-ce
[INFO]Interface(s) available on node essio51-ce
[INFO]Considered interface(s) of node essio51-ce are ['enP48p1s0f0'] with RDMA Port ['Inbuilt']
for this operation
[INFO]Checking for IPv4 address assignment on node essio51

[INFO]Interface name enP48p1s0f0 consider for IP assignment with IP address 192.168.3.51 for
node essio51-ce
[INFO]Successfully assigned IP Address to interface enP48p1s0f0 at node essio51-ce
[INFO]IPv4 Assignment successful. Reloading connections.
[OK] essgennetworks passed successfully
[INFO]IP address assignment completed, now follow Scale MROT document to configure Multi Rail
over TCP.
```



---

## Appendix Y. Bring your own EMS

From ESS 6.1.5.1 and higher, you can manage ESS 3500 by using IBM Power9 hardware or you can bring your own hardware, and run a virtual machine (VM) on this hardware. This hardware is the EMS for your cluster, which is BYOE, and the VM is EMSVM.

Before choosing a BYOE or IBM Power9, you must know the difference between them. The following activities are supported on the EMS that is validated, supported, and monitored by IBM. However, IBM does not support any of these activities on BYOE. Customers must support the following activities on the BYOE:

- Hardware monitoring on the host that runs the EMSVM of IBM ESS.
- Call home related events on the hardware
- Firmware updates from IBM on the hardware that hosts the EMSVM
- Operating system (OS) updates on the base OS that hosts the EMSVM

**Note:** The OS of the EMSVM is updated although it is a part of the BYOE. IBM ESS, which has I/O nodes and IBM protocol nodes, is monitored and upgraded by the standard update flow that is run from the EMSVM.

### Requirements

These requirements are valid for ESS 6.1.5.1 and higher. Check the latest documentation available in IBM Docs for the up-to-date requirements.

#### Host requirements

A non-IBM host must meet hardware requirements to run the EMSVM. These requirements are applicable for small and standard setups. Small setups can be used to manage up to two ESS systems. Standard setups can be used to manage the same number of ESS systems as provided by IBM Power9 EMS.

**Note:** These requirements might be a combination of BIOS, motherboard hardware wiring, and network cards, or specific to a vendor. Customer must ensure that these requirements are met. For any instructions on how to meet these requirement or combine them on a BYOE hardware, customer must contact the BYOE vendor. IBM does not support these requirements on a BYOE hardware because the BYOE hardware is not an IBM hardware.

Customers must ensure that the BYOE hardware fulfills the following requirements:

- AMD EPYC processor, single or dual socket (AMD EPYC naples are not supported.)
- VT-x enabled
- KVM installed and enabled on OS
- A PCI pass-through capable system
- Minimum 600 GB free space on the /emsvm directory
- The /emsvm directory must be mounted on a file system of a local device (not on iSCSI, FC, NFS, or IBM Spectrum Scale)
- One quad-port Ethernet card for low-speed network (LSN), with all ports identical
- The LSN card must belong to its own IOMMU group, preferably each port on its own IOMMU group
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.6 and 8.7 that are running in the host with a valid subscription
- SELinux must be disabled on the host.
- The host must be fully compliant with tuned virtual-host profile
- No other VMs must running in the host
- No other workloads must be running on the host
- IBM Spectrum Scale software must not be installed on the host

- Minimum one ConnectX-6 VPI card for high-speed network (HSN)
- Each HSN card must belong to its own IOMMU group, for multiport preferable each port on its own IOMMU group
- No more than three HSN NIC
- Minimum two HSN ports
- No more than six HSN ports
- Setup requirements

| Setup    | Requirement                                  |
|----------|----------------------------------------------|
| Small    | Host with minimum 16 cores and 128 GB RAM    |
|          | Minimum PCIe 3.0 x16 lines for HSN slots     |
| Standard | Host with minimum of 32 cores and 256 GB RAM |
|          | Minimum PCIe 4.0 x16 lines for HSN slots     |

IBM created a tool called IBM EMSVM tool to manage the hosts checks and the lifecycle of the EMSVM. The tool is available on public GitHub. Customers can download and certify their hosts before purchasing anything from IBM. To install the tool, go to <https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM>.

**Important:** This tool helps to check requirements and compliance. However, it is customer responsibility to ensure that the setup is compliant with the requirements.

#### Recommended requirements on the host

Although a supported setup is not mandatory, the following configurations are recommended, and some requirements might become mandatory:

- A mirrored host OS drive
- Out-of-band management of the host
- Some Ethernet ports that are not part of the quad-port card or HSN cards. These cards will be mapped to the EMSVM for the remote access to the OS of the host.
- Additional power supply

### Network requirements

The EMSVM has two types of networks. The low-speed network with a quad-port Ethernet card where all four ports identical. From one through three cards for the high-speed network (HSN) that provide between two to six ports.

All CX6 cards and the first valid four port NIC will be fully passed into the virtual machine. At this point, they will be unavailable (or seen) by the host.

#### Low-speed network

The LSN in the EMSVM is used because it has for identical ports. The quad-port card is based on Power9 EMS that connects to the ESS management network, the ESS FSP network, and the campus (the customer network). The lower port must not be cabled because it is reserved for IBM Power9 EMS.

The following figure shows the ports of the quad-port card with their logical use:

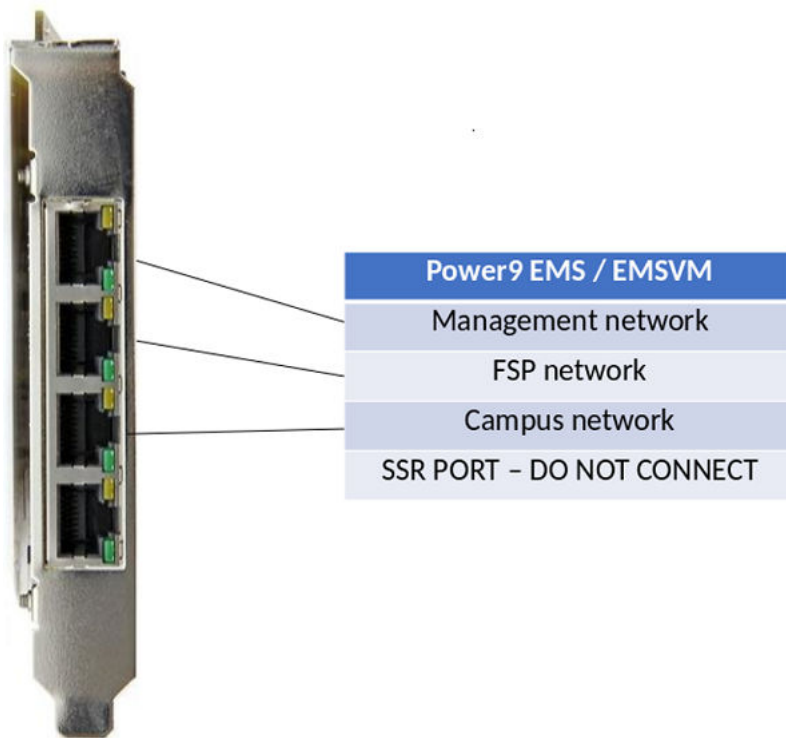


Figure 34. LSN ports

For details about each network of ESS, see the *ESS 3000, ESS 5000, 3500, and ESS Legacy networking requirements* section in the ESS software deployment preparation chapter in the IBM ESS documentation.

### High-speed network

The HSN used on the EMSVM must be identical to the HSN on a POWER9 EMS node to connect to the IBM Spectrum Scale daemon and admin networks. For details, refer the *ESS 3000, ESS 5000, 3500, and ESS Legacy networking requirements* section in the ESS software deployment preparation chapter in the IBM ESS documentation.

### Other requirements

To run the EMSVM management tool, which is in public GitHub, ensure that the following requirements are met for the host:

- Python 3.6 or higher version is installed.
- The following RPM packages are installed:
  - dmidecode
  - pciutils
  - numactl-libs
  - tuned
- The following coreutils are installed:
  - virt-manager
  - libvirt-daemon
  - libvirt-client
  - libvirt
  - libguestfs-tools
  - virt-install
  - qemu-img

- python3-libvirt
- python3-requests
- python3-netifaces
- python3-ethtool
- xz
- xz-libs
- FIPS must be disabled on the host (needed for MD5 sums).

## Managing more than one quad-port cards on the host

If the host has more than one quad-port Ethernet cards with identical ports, only the lowest PCI address is mapped to the EMSVM. Other card(s) are not mapped to the EMSVM. For example:

```
# grep PCI_SLOT_NAME /sys/class/net/*/device/uevent
```

The Ethernet PCI address output is as follows:

```
/sys/class/net/eth0/device/uevent:PCI_SLOT_NAME=0000:45:00.0
/sys/class/net/eth1/device/uevent:PCI_SLOT_NAME=0000:45:00.1
/sys/class/net/eth2/device/uevent:PCI_SLOT_NAME=0000:45:00.2
/sys/class/net/eth3/device/uevent:PCI_SLOT_NAME=0000:45:00.3
/sys/class/net/eth4/device/uevent:PCI_SLOT_NAME=0000:c3:00.0
/sys/class/net/eth5/device/uevent:PCI_SLOT_NAME=0000:c3:00.1
/sys/class/net/eth6/device/uevent:PCI_SLOT_NAME=0000:c3:00.2
/sys/class/net/eth7/device/uevent:PCI_SLOT_NAME=0000:c3:00.3
/sys/class/net/ib0/device/uevent:PCI_SLOT_NAME=0000:27:00.0
/sys/class/net/ib1/device/uevent:PCI_SLOT_NAME=0000:27:00.1
```

The card on the 000:45:00 PCI address, at the lowest in hexadecimal, is mapped to the EMSVM.

**Note:** Manage cards, only if the host has more than one quad-port Ethernet cards with identical ports. If you are using any other card for the host access, you need not to manage any cards.

## EMSVM deployment

For a successful deployment of the EMS as a virtual machine on ESS, validate the system on which you are planning to host the EMSVM. The system must meet all requirements. For more information, see “Requirements” on page 151.

In addition to hardware and software requirements, the following additional information is required to complete the initial EMSVM configuration:

- Access to the EMSVM repository on public GitHub to download the IBM EMSVM tool (<https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM>).
- An IBM account to access IBM Fix Central to download the EMSVM disk image.
- IP address information for the initial EMSVM configuration.

| Network        | IP address | Netmask | Gateway |
|----------------|------------|---------|---------|
| Campus         |            |         |         |
| ESS management |            |         |         |
| OS FSP         |            |         |         |

**Note:** It is also recommended to obtain an additional IP address. By using this IP address the OS of the system that hosts the EMSVM can be configured. This IP address cannot be configured on 4-port Ethernet adapter that will be assigned to the EMSVM.

## EMSVM deployment flow

To deploy the EMSVM, follow the defined deployment flow.

Always refer to the latest version of documentation available on IBM Docs for the updated deployment flow.

The following figure shows the EMSVM deployment flow:

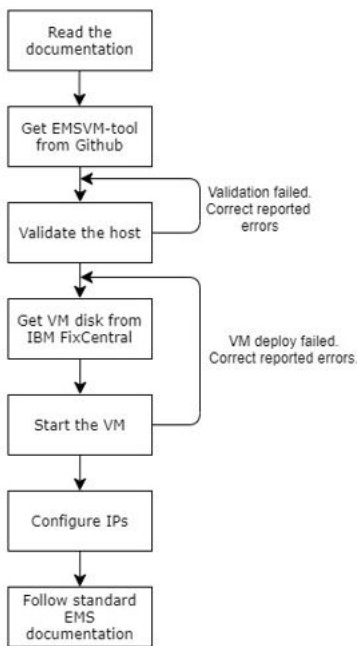


Figure 35. EMSVM deployment flow

## Getting the IBM EMSVM tool

The EMSVM deployment is automated and managed by using the IBM EMSVM tool. This tool is used for the initial deployment and the management of the EMSVM. The current version of the tool can be downloaded from the [GitHub repository](#).

This tool must be copied to the local file system of the host that is running the EMSVM.

The IBM EMSVM tool provides the following options:

### -h

This tool provides several options. To get the options, the tool supports execution of the tool without additional options or with the -h option.

For example:

```
[root@x86node EMSVM]# ./emsvm -h
```

The IBM EMSVM tool provides the following options:

```
usage: EMS VM [-h] (--check-host | --connect-EMS | --start-EMS | --check-EMS)
              [-d] [-v]

EMS VM host check and VM run

optional arguments:
  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
  --check-host          Assess the readiness of the host to run EMS VM
  --connect-EMS         Connect to the EMS VM console information
  --start-EMS           Start EMS VM in this host
  --check-EMS           Check if EMS VM is UP
  -d, --debug           Print verbose messages also to shell
  -v, --version          show program's version number and exit
[root@x86node EMSVM]#
```

### --check-host

Performs checks on the host system to verify that all prerequisites to run the EMSVM are validated. Check the output for any errors or warnings that are preventing to start the EMSVM.

This option can be used to validate the host system on which you are planning to run the EMSVM. As this tool is hosted on public GitHub, these requirements can be checked before you make a decision whether you want to use the EMSVM or the IBM Power9 as EMS.

**Note:** The EMSVM disk image from IBM Fix Central is not required to use this tool for validating the host.

#### --connect-EMS

Connects the current user session to the console of running EMSVM on the host.

This option must be used on first start-up of a new EMSVM to access the virtual machine and perform that **IBM SSR setup** task. The EMSVM does not have any default IP addresses configured.

The **IBM SSR setup** task configures the following information on the EMSVM according to the user provided information.

- Password for user **root**
- SSH keys and passwordless SSH
- IP addresses for:
  - Campus network
  - ESS Management network
  - OS FSP network

**Note:** IBM SSR setup tool must be used for IP address configuration of the EMSVM. Do not configure IP addresses manually by using OS provided tools.

#### --start-EMS

Starts the EMSVM. the EMSVM must be manually started first time when the virtual machine is being deployed, and if the virtual machine is manually shut down.

During the first start-up, the EMSVM is set to auto start with the host. Do not run this step every time when the host boots.

#### --check-EMS

Validates the status of the EMSVM. The IBM EMSVM tool reports the EMSVM domain status on the host.

This option returns status of the EMSVM domain in a readable format. In addition to the readable output, the command returns “0”, if the EMSVM domain is found **active** and “1” for any other state.

This information can be used to validate the power state of the EMSVM with an external monitoring tool that is running on the host.

For example:

```
[root@x86node EMSVM]# ./emsvm --check-EMS
```

A sample output is as follows:

```
2022-11-16 08:39:37,269 INFO: Welcome to EMS VM version 0.53
2022-11-16 08:39:37,269 INFO: Please visit https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM for issues and
new versions
2022-11-16 08:39:37,269 INFO: Log file with details for this run is saved on: /var/log/
emsvm/emsvm_check_EMS_2022_11_16_08_39_37.log
2022-11-16 08:39:37,279 INFO: This system is AMD EPYC based
2022-11-16 08:39:37,279 INFO: This host does not have AMD EPYC 1st Generation (Naples)
2022-11-16 08:39:37,388 INFO: This host CPU[s] are KVM capable and has extensions enabled
2022-11-16 08:39:37,388 INFO: Going to check if /dev/kvm exists
2022-11-16 08:39:37,389 INFO: The device /dev/kvm exists
2022-11-16 08:39:38,417 INFO: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.6 is a supported OS
2022-11-16 08:39:38,428 INFO: Checking RPM packages status
2022-11-16 08:39:38,581 INFO: All required RPM packages have the expected installation
status
2022-11-16 08:39:38,665 INFO: Could not get current version from repository, please be
sure that you are running latest version from https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM
2022-11-16 08:39:43,712 INFO: EMSVM KVM domain exists
2022-11-16 08:39:43,712 INFO: KVM VM domain EMSVM is already active
[root@x86node EMSVM]#
```

## Validating the host

The host system that runs the virtualization layer of the EMSVM must fulfill hardware and software requirements. The IBM EMSVM tool validates the host when the tool performs operations, such as deployment or starting the EMSVM.

When you run the IBM EMSVM tool, it writes a log file into the `/var/log/emsvm` host directory when the tool is run. The logs can be used for auditing the activity related to the EMSVM and for debugging issues during deployments and start-ups of the EMSVM.

Validate the host before you deploy the EMSVM. Check the summary results of host validation at end of the output.

For example:

```
[root@x86node EMSVM]# ./emsvm --check-host
```

A sample output passed hosts validation is as follows:

```
2022-11-14 06:06:51,400 INFO: Welcome to EMS VM version 0.53
2022-11-14 06:06:51,400 INFO: Please visit https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM for issues and new
versions
2022-11-14 06:06:51,400 INFO: Log file with details for this run is saved on: /var/log/emsvm/
emsvm_check_host_2022_11_14_06_06_51.log
2022-11-14 06:06:51,409 INFO: This system is AMD EPYC based
2022-11-14 06:06:51,409 INFO: This host does not have AMD EPYC 1st Generation (Naples)
2022-11-14 06:06:51,516 INFO: This host CPU[s] are KVM capable and has extensions enabled
2022-11-14 06:06:51,516 INFO: Going to check if /dev/kvm exists
2022-11-14 06:06:51,516 INFO: The device /dev/kvm exists
2022-11-14 06:06:52,534 INFO: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.6 is a supported OS
2022-11-14 06:06:52,544 INFO: Checking RPM packages status
2022-11-14 06:06:52,697 INFO: All required RPM packages have the expected installation status
2022-11-14 06:06:52,779 INFO: Could not get current version from repository, please be sure
that you are running latest version from https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM
2022-11-14 06:06:57,785 INFO: Looking that we have at least one NIC for High Speed Network
(HSN)
2022-11-14 06:06:57,803 INFO: The NIC 'Infiniband controller: Mellanox Technologies MT28800
Family [ConnectX-6 Ex]' is OK as HSN NIC. Going to append PCI address '0000:27:00.0' as HSN NIC
2022-11-14 06:06:57,803 INFO: The NIC 'Infiniband controller: Mellanox Technologies MT28800
Family [ConnectX-6 Ex]' is OK as HSN NIC. Going to append PCI address '0000:27:00.1' as HSN NIC
2022-11-14 06:06:57,823 INFO: Found at least two HSN ports
2022-11-14 06:06:57,823 INFO: Looking that we have at least one quad port Ethernet NIC for
Low Speed Network (LSN)
2022-11-14 06:06:57,832 INFO: The NIC 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I350 Gigabit
Network Connection (rev 01)' is OK as LSN NIC. Going to append PCI address '0000:45:00.' for
ports 0, 1, 2 and 3
2022-11-14 06:06:57,832 INFO: Host has 32 core[s] which complies with 32 cores required
2022-11-14 06:06:57,832 INFO: Total memory is 251.38 GB, which is more than the required 247
GB
2022-11-14 06:07:00,181 INFO: Current tune profile is 'virtual-host'
2022-11-14 06:07:00,358 INFO: OS settings match the running profile
2022-11-14 06:07:00,399 INFO: KVM storage pool EMSVM already exists
2022-11-14 06:07:00,449 INFO: The path /emsvm has 1181.29 GB free excluding reserved space
which is more than the required 600 GB
2022-11-14 06:07:00,455 INFO: KVM executable file /usr/libexec/qemu-kvm exists
2022-11-14 06:07:00,455 INFO:
-----
| Summary of this run |
-----
2022-11-14 06:07:00,455 INFO: Log file with details for this run is saved on: /var/log/emsvm/
emsvm_check_host_2022_11_14_06_06_51.log
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: Start of the checks on: 2022/11/14 06:06:51
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: End of the checks on: 2022/11/14 06:07:00
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: All tests were passed passed on x86node
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: The path /emsvm has 1181.29 GB free excluding reserved space
which is more than the required 600 GB
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: CPU model is AMD EPYC 7302 16-Core Processor
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: This host has 2 socket(s)
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: The VM CPU cores would be 30 core[s]
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: The VM memory would be 239 GB
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: The VM HSN PCI address[es] would be ['0000:27:00.0',
'0000:27:00.1']
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: The VM LSN PCI addresses would be ['0000:45:00.0',
'0000:45:00.1', '0000:45:00.2', '0000:45:00.3']
2022-11-14 06:07:00,456 INFO: OS is running and matching tune profile virtual-host
```

**OK: All tests passed, you can run EMS VM on x86node host**

```
[root@x86node EMSVM]#
```

**Note:** If the checks are passed, for small setups validations a “WARNING” message is displayed instead of “OK”.

## Getting an EMSVM disk image from IBM Fix Central

An IBM account with a valid subscription is required to download the EMSVM disk image from [IBM Fix Central](https://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral) (<https://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral>).

1. Download the EMSVM disk image from [IBM Fix Central](https://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral) (<https://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral>).
2. Transfer the downloaded disk image file to the /emsvm file system of the host that is running the EMSVM.  
EMSVM is delivered as a compressed qcow2 disk image file. Do not decompress or rename the file.
3. Store the EMSVM.qcow2.xz file in the /emsvm directory without making any changes.

```
[root@x86node emsvm]# pwd
/emsvm
[root@x86node emsvm]# ls -la
drwxr-xr-x. 2 root root      4096 Nov 14 06:42 .
dr-xr-xr-x. 23 root root      4096 Oct 20 06:15 ..
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 1094970356 Nov 14 06:42 EMSVM.qcow2.xz
```

## Starting the EMSVM

1. Start the EMSVM by using the IBM EMSVM tool.  
Start this tool manually if you are starting a new EMSVM.
2. During the first manual start, set the EMSVM to auto start with the host system.

An error during start the EMSVM without a virtual disk file is displayed in the following example:

```
[root@x86node EMSVM]# ./emsvm --start-EMS
...
2022-11-14 06:41:06,611 WARNING:      EMSVM KVM domain does not exist. Going to create it
2022-11-14 06:41:06,638 INFO:       KVM VM has been created
2022-11-14 06:41:06,638 INFO:       KVM VM domain EMSVM is set to autostart
2022-11-14 06:41:06,638 ERROR:      EMS VM compressed disk file /emsvm/EMSVM.qcow2.xz does not exist. Download the file from IBM and place it on the expected directory
[root@x86node EMSVM]#
```

An error when the EMSVM is started with an IP address configured on the quad-port adapter is displayed in the following example:

```
[root@x86node EMSVM]# ./emsvm --start-EMS
...
2022-11-14 06:45:00,240 INFO:       OS device name: 'eth2' PCI address: '0000:45:00.0'
Description: 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I350 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)'
2022-11-14 06:45:00,240 INFO:       OS device name: 'eth5' PCI address: '0000:45:00.1'
Description: 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I350 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)'
2022-11-14 06:45:00,240 INFO:       OS device name: 'eth6' PCI address: '0000:45:00.2'
Description: 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I350 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)'
2022-11-14 06:45:00,240 INFO:       OS device name: 'eth7' PCI address: '0000:45:00.3'
Description: 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I350 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)'
2022-11-14 06:45:00,243 INFO:       Interface eth2 has IP 192.168.20.231
2022-11-14 06:45:00,244 ERROR:      We found IP address[es] on one or more interfaces that are going to be passthrough to the VM
[root@x86node EMSVM]#
```

If no errors are displayed during the prerequisites check after starting the EMSVM, confirmation to start the EMSVM on this host is displayed.

For example:

```
[root@x86node EMSVM]# ./emsvm --start-EMS
```

Successful start of EMSVM output is as follows:

```
2022-11-14 06:48:28,934 INFO: Welcome to EMS VM version 0.53
2022-11-14 06:48:28,934 INFO: Please visit https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM for issues and new
versions
2022-11-14 06:48:28,934 INFO: Log file with details for this run is saved on: /var/log/emsvm/
emsvm_start_EMS_2022_11_14_06_48_28.log
2022-11-14 06:48:28,941 INFO: This system is AMD EPYC based
2022-11-14 06:48:28,942 INFO: This host does not have AMD EPYC 1st Generation (Naples)
2022-11-14 06:48:29,052 INFO: This host CPU[s] are KVM capable and has extensions enabled
2022-11-14 06:48:29,052 INFO: Going to check if /dev/kvm exists
2022-11-14 06:48:29,052 INFO: The device /dev/kvm exists
2022-11-14 06:48:30,068 INFO: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.6 is a supported OS
2022-11-14 06:48:30,078 INFO: Checking RPM packages status
2022-11-14 06:48:30,232 INFO: All required RPM packages have the expected installation status
2022-11-14 06:48:30,316 INFO: Could not get current version from repository, please be sure
that you are running latest version from https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM
2022-11-14 06:48:35,321 INFO: Looking that we have at least one NIC for High Speed Network
(HSN)
2022-11-14 06:48:35,338 INFO: The NIC 'Infiniband controller: Mellanox Technologies MT28800
Family [ConnectX-6 Ex]' is OK as HSN NIC. Going to append PCI address '0000:27:00.0' as HSN NIC
2022-11-14 06:48:35,338 INFO: The NIC 'Infiniband controller: Mellanox Technologies MT28800
Family [ConnectX-6 Ex]' is OK as HSN NIC. Going to append PCI address '0000:27:00.1' as HSN NIC
2022-11-14 06:48:35,357 INFO: Found at least two HSN ports
2022-11-14 06:48:35,357 INFO: Looking that we have at least one quad port Ethernet NIC for
Low Speed Network (LSN)
2022-11-14 06:48:35,365 INFO: The NIC 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I350 Gigabit
Network Connection (rev 01)' is OK as LSN NIC. Going to append PCI address '0000:45:00.' for
ports 0, 1, 2 and 3
2022-11-14 06:48:35,366 INFO: Host has 32 core[s] which complies with 32 cores required
2022-11-14 06:48:35,366 INFO: Total memory is 251.38 GB, which is more than the required 247
GB
2022-11-14 06:48:38,097 INFO: Current tune profile is 'virtual-host'
2022-11-14 06:48:38,273 INFO: OS settings match the running profile
2022-11-14 06:48:38,314 INFO: KVM storage pool EMSVM already exists
2022-11-14 06:48:38,362 INFO: The path /emsvm has 1181.29 GB free excluding reserved space
which is more than the required 600 GB
2022-11-14 06:48:38,367 INFO: KVM executable file /usr/libexec/qemu-kvm exists
2022-11-14 06:48:38,367 INFO: All tests passed, starting EMS VM
2022-11-14 06:48:38,368 WARNING: EMSVM KVM domain does not exist. Going to create it
2022-11-14 06:48:38,394 INFO: KVM VM has been created
2022-11-14 06:48:38,394 INFO: KVM VM domain EMSVM is set to autostart
2022-11-14 06:48:38,395 INFO:
2022-11-14 06:48:38,395 INFO: You have requested to start the EMS VM in this host
2022-11-14 06:48:38,395 INFO: The following PCI devices are going to be assigned to the VM
and are not going to be accessible from the host
2022-11-14 06:48:38,395 INFO: If you are using any of them to connect to the host, you are
going to lose connectivity to this host
2022-11-14 06:48:38,395 INFO: Please be sure that you are not using any of the following
devices before continuing the start up of the EMS VM
2022-11-14 06:48:38,432 INFO: PCI address: '0000:27:00.0' Description: 'Infiniband
controller: Mellanox Technologies MT28800 Family [ConnectX-6 Ex]'
2022-11-14 06:48:38,433 INFO: PCI address: '0000:27:00.1' Description: 'Infiniband
controller: Mellanox Technologies MT28800 Family [ConnectX-6 Ex]'
2022-11-14 06:48:38,433 INFO: OS device name: 'eth2' PCI address: '0000:45:00.0'
Description: 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I350 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)'
2022-11-14 06:48:38,433 INFO: OS device name: 'eth5' PCI address: '0000:45:00.1'
Description: 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I350 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)'
2022-11-14 06:48:38,433 INFO: OS device name: 'eth6' PCI address: '0000:45:00.2'
Description: 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I350 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)'
2022-11-14 06:48:38,433 INFO: OS device name: 'eth7' PCI address: '0000:45:00.3'
Description: 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I350 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)'
2022-11-14 06:48:38,435 INFO: No IP addresses found on the interfaces to be passthrough to
the VM
2022-11-14 06:48:38,435 INFO: Do you want to continue with the start EMS VM? (y/n):
y
2022-11-14 06:49:47,807 INFO: It can take several minutes to start the VM, please wait ...
2022-11-14 06:50:32,206 INFO: EMS VM is started now ...
[root@x86node EMSVM]#
```

## Configuring IP addresses

The downloaded EMSVM disk image does not contain pre-configured IP addresses for any network interface. When you start the EMSVM first time, the IP address must be configured to allow inbound and outbound communication of the EMSVM.

1. To configure IP addresses for the EMSVM, use the `emsvm --connect-EMS` option to connect to the EMSVM console from the host system.

```
[root@x86node EMSVM]# ./emsvm --connect-EMS
```

A sample output is as follows:

```
2022-11-14 06:54:50,900 INFO: Welcome to EMS VM version 0.53
2022-11-14 06:54:50,900 INFO: Please visit https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM for issues and
new versions
2022-11-14 06:54:50,900 INFO: Log file with details for this run is saved on: /var/log/
emsvm/emsvm_connect EMS_2022_11_14_06_54_50.log
2022-11-14 06:54:50,909 INFO: This system is AMD EPYC based
2022-11-14 06:54:50,910 INFO: This host does not have AMD EPYC 1st Generation (Naples)
2022-11-14 06:54:51,018 INFO: This host CPU[s] are KVM capable and has extensions enabled
2022-11-14 06:54:51,018 INFO: Going to check if /dev/kvm exists
2022-11-14 06:54:51,018 INFO: The device /dev/kvm exists
2022-11-14 06:54:52,038 INFO: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.6 is a supported OS
2022-11-14 06:54:52,048 INFO: Checking RPM packages status
2022-11-14 06:54:52,201 INFO: All required RPM packages have the expected installation
status
2022-11-14 06:54:52,282 INFO: Could not get current version from repository, please be
sure that you are running latest version from https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM
2022-11-14 06:54:57,331 INFO: EMSVM KVM domain exists
2022-11-14 06:54:57,331 INFO: KVM VM domain EMSVM is already active

Connected to domain 'EMSVM'
Escape character is ^] (Ctrl + )

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.6 (Ootpa)
Kernel 4.18.0-372.9.1.el8.x86_64 on an x86_64

localhost login: root
Password:
You are required to change your password immediately (administrator enforced)
Current password:
New password:
Retype new password:
Last login: Tue Nov 1 03:50:33 on ttyS0
[root@localhost ~]#
```

2. When the Connected to domain 'EMSVM' message is displayed press <Enter> to log in.

**Note:** The EMSVM has a default password **ibmesscluster**, which is configured for the **root** user. The default password must be changed after the first login.

3. Configure IP address of the EMSVM by using the `ess_ssr_setup` tool, which is provided with the EMSVM disk image.

A TDA table with necessary information is needed for the IP address configuration.

The `ess_ssr_setup` tool provides an option to configure the EMSVM as a new deployment or adding EMS to an existing ESS. Regardless of selected option, the tool offers an option to test the management network connectivity to an existing device on that network. This test can be skipped, if new deployment option is selected.

An example of IP address configuration by using the `ess_ssr_setup` tool as follows:

```
[root@localhost ~]# ess_ssr_setup
```

A sample output is as follows:

```
2022-11-14 11:58:18,381 INFO: Welcome to IBM ESS 'code 20' helper tool
2022-11-14 11:58:18,381 INFO: You are going to need the TDA table information to
continue. If you do not have that information, you CANNOT continue.
2022-11-14 11:58:18,381 INFO: For debug output or issues, be sure to include the debug
file on /opt/ibm/ess/tools/bin/code20_debug.log

Do you want to continue? (y/n): y
2022-11-14 11:58:39,291 INFO: We strongly recommend setting a campus network in the EMS.

Do you want set up the campus network in this node? (y/n): y
Please type the campus IP of this node (i.e. 192.168.80.10): 192.168.64.231
Please type the campus netmask of this node (i.e. 255.255.255.0): 255.255.255.0
Please type the campus gateway IP (i.e. 192.168.80.1): 192.168.64.1

Please type the management IP of this node (i.e. 192.168.10.10): 192.168.21.231
```

```

Please type the management netmask of this node (i.e. 255.255.255.0): 255.255.255.0

Please type the OS FSP IP (C11-T2 for P9 EMS) of this EMS (i.e. 192.168.20.9): 192.168.20.232
Please type the OS FSP netmask of this node (i.e. 255.255.255.0): 255.255.255.0
2022-11-14 12:00:29,966 INFO:      Going to ask for the node password. All the nodes must have
the same password for code 20
2022-11-14 12:00:29,966 INFO:      Be aware that the password will not be prompted into the
screen and you will not see it on it
Password:
2022-11-14 12:00:34,965 INFO:      Please type the same password again
Password:

Is this a new deployment or adding a block to a running cluster? (new/add): new
Is there already any node in this environment that we can test ping connectivity with?
(y/n): n
2022-11-14 12:01:26,158 WARNING:      This is a new setup and we have no peers to check
with, no ping tests will happen

Please review the entered information before continuing.
No changes in the system had been performed at this point.

The entered IP in CIDR format for CAMPUS is 192.168.64.231/24
The entered IP in CIDR format for MANAGEMENT is 192.168.21.231/24
The entered IP in CIDR format for EMS OS FSP (C11-T2 for P9 EMS) is 192.168.20.232/24
No ping tests to be performed.
The entered root password to set is: cluster

Do you want to continue and perform changes and tests in this node? (y/n): y
2022-11-14 12:02:25,072 INFO:      Going to set the root user password of this node to the
password typed before
2022-11-14 12:02:25,349 INFO:      Run 'Root_password_set' completed successfully
2022-11-14 12:02:25,436 WARNING:      Passwordless root SSH to localhost test is passed.
We are going to try to fix it. If a password is asked type same you where entered during
this run.
The authenticity of host 'localhost (::1)' can't be established.
ECDSA key fingerprint is SHA256:eT/DjXNMyp61MxM8z4J+3eD9INi7u0cWcb/aEZpfqOA.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no/[fingerprint])? yes
2022-11-14 12:02:34,811 INFO:      Self fix of root SSH to localhost worked, moving on
2022-11-14 12:02:34,814 INFO:      Run 'Passwordless root SSH localhost' completed successfully
2022-11-14 12:02:34,814 INFO:      Going to set Management Network IP on this node
2022-11-14 12:02:34,866 WARNING:      The command sudo nmcli con show mgmt returned code
10
2022-11-14 12:02:34,867 INFO:      The output of running the command sudo nmcli con show mgmt
was:
Error: mgmt - no such connection profile.

0 0 0 0
2022-11-14 12:02:35,051 INFO:      Run 'Set MGMT IP' completed successfully
2022-11-14 12:02:35,051 INFO:      Going to set Campus Network IP on this node
2022-11-14 12:02:35,102 WARNING:      The command sudo nmcli con show campus returned
code 10
2022-11-14 12:02:35,102 INFO:      The output of running the command sudo nmcli con show
campus was:
Error: campus - no such connection profile.

2022-11-14 12:02:35,276 INFO:      Run 'Set Campus IP' completed successfully
2022-11-14 12:02:35,276 INFO:      Going to set OS FSP Network IP on this node
2022-11-14 12:02:35,325 WARNING:      The command sudo nmcli con show fsp returned code 10
2022-11-14 12:02:35,325 INFO:      The output of running the command sudo nmcli con show fsp
was:
Error: fsp - no such connection profile.

2022-11-14 12:02:35,502 INFO:      Run 'Set OS FSP IP' completed successfully
2022-11-14 12:02:35,502 WARNING:      This is the first node of a new setup, no ping
tests are going to be performed
2022-11-14 12:02:35,506 INFO:      Run 'Ping not tested' completed successfully
The following tasks were run in this node
TASK: DB_init was successfully run on 2022-11-14T11:58:18.141767
TASK: Root_password_set was successfully run on 2022-11-14T12:02:25.346899
TASK: Passwordless root SSH localhost was successfully run on 2022-11-14T12:02:34.812026
TASK: Set MGMT IP was successfully run on 2022-11-14T12:02:35.048829
TASK: Set Campus IP was successfully run on 2022-11-14T12:02:35.273364
TASK: Set OS FSP IP was successfully run on 2022-11-14T12:02:35.497673
TASK: Ping not tested was successfully run on 2022-11-14T12:02:35.502590
2022-11-14 12:02:35,508 INFO:      All run tasks were successful
2022-11-14 12:02:35,509 INFO:      All required tests were completed successfully
2022-11-14 12:02:35,509 INFO:      CODE 20 completed.
[root@localhost ~]#

```

A successful execution of the `ess_ssr_setup` tool displays the “CODE 20 completed.” message. The “Code 20” must complete successfully to install the EMSVM on an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

**Note:** To disconnect from the console session of the EMSVM use ‘^]’ key combination on Linux systems. For windows systems, press <Ctrl - ^>.

4. After a successful completion of IP address setup by using the `ess_ssr_setup` tool, access the EMSVM by using the SSH client.

Now, this EMSVM is ready for usage.

5. To continue with the ESS setup, refer the deployment process described in the IBM ESS Deployment Guide in IBM Docs.

## Other considerations

IBM ESS does not support the following host related tasks:

### Backing up and restoring of the EMSVM

If the host might goes into the irrecoverable mode, recover the host by reinstalling the OS or by using a remote copy:

- Recover the host by reinstalling the OS on the same host or different host that meets the requirements, and boot the EMSVM.
    - Copy the `/emsvm/ESSVM.qcow2` file outside of the host.
    - Ensure that the copied file is compatible.
- TIP:** Copy the file while EMSVM is shut down. Any freeze, other type of quiescence of the EMSVM, or the underlying file system in the host might corrupt the EMSVM OS or the quorum of the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster, which has the EMSVM, might be lost.
- Ensure that the quorum of the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is not lost, and shut down the EMSVM for backup.
- You can recover the host by using a remote copy of the EMSVM virtual disk.
    - Install the EMSVM GitHub tool to recreate the EMSVM for the host (the same or different host).
    - Copy the virtual disk into the `/emsvm` directory and start the EMSVM with the IBM EMSVM GitHub tool.

### Shutting down the EMSVM

The IBM EMSVM GitHub tool does not shut down the EMSVM. The EMSVM must be stopped from the EMSVM by using SSH or the IBM EMSVM GitHub tool from the host.

- Ensure that shutting down the EMSVM does not cause any problem in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster, and then shut down the EMSVM with standard OS commands.
- If the EMSVM OS does not respond, you can reboot the host to reboot the EMSVM.

**Note:** The EMSVM is set to auto start when the host boots.

- You can use standard **virsh** commands from the host to stop the EMSVM. However, this is not recommended.

### Monitoring the host hardware

IBM Power9 EMS or EMSVM does not monitor the host hardware. Customer must monitor the host hardware to avoid any risk. Customer must set up the host by following the vendor recommended best practices of hardware monitoring for the host of EMSVM.

### Accessing to the host

The access to the host is needed for the EMSVM. It is recommended to set additional Ethernet ports into the host for the remote access and out-of-band management access to the host according to the best practices recommended by the vendor of the host.

## Updating the host OS and the firmware

Updates of the OS and firmware currency and compatibility with EMSVM in the host is entirely customer responsibility. IBM does not provide any support for the host OS and firmware updates.

- When upgrading an OS, ensure that OS is supported by the EMSVM.
- When upgrading the firmware, specially of the HSN cards, check with the vendor of cards whether the version you are installing is compatible with the Mellanox OFED version that EMSVM uses.
- When you need to reboot the host, ensure that EMSVM is down before the reboot and does not cause any issue in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

## Changing the port type of an NVIDIA ConnectX VPI adapter

If you need to change the VPI port type from Ethernet to InfiniBand or vice versa, change the port type from the host. Do not change it from the EMSVM. Refer the documentation of the system provider about how to change the VPI port. In most cases, the **mst** command used to change the port type.

Complete the following steps to change the VPI port type:

1. Shut down the EMSVM, ensure that the quorum of the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is not lost.
2. Change the needed ports to the required mode.
3. Reboot host, EMSVM starts automatically.
4. Use the ports within the EMSVM.

Alternatively, you can set the VPI type before you deploy the EMSVM on your host.



---

## Appendix Z. Dual EMS support in ESS

This appendix describes the basic requirements, use cases, and configuration steps for the dual EMS support.

Until ESS 6.1.6.0, the deployment did not formally support two EMS in the same cluster. Many customers had one of three environments.

- Single P8, P9, or BYOE management node, which controlled a single cluster and single site.
- Single P8, P9, or BYOE management node, which controlled a single cluster and dual sites. Both sites networked via a stretch cluster (all networks stretch between locations).
- Dual P9 management nodes, two locations. Only the high-speed network stretched between sites. The management networks stayed local per site. Thus, each management node could only see its local hardware.

The dual EMS provides a live backup EMS to become available when the primary goes down. Also, dual EMS allows for multiple GUI services and collectors to become active. The GUI, in particular, allows CSI applications to stay active when one EMS goes down.

### Requirements

Ensure that following requirements met for the dual EMS support:

- The upgraded version needs to be V5.1.6.1 (ESS 6.1.6.0) or higher.
- Two P9 EMS
- Single cluster
- All networks are flat, single namespace (ESS stretch cluster requirements)
- All nodes (including two EMS) have unique FQDN/IPs
- The `/etc/hosts` file copied from a primary to a backup EMS (the same as `hosts.yml`)

### Support statement

Only P9 EMS supported (no BYOE, no P8, or no mixing)

### Restrictions

- This is not an HA ESS but an HA GUI/ CSI.
- Concept of primary/secondary EMS.
- If a primary EMS goes down, a secondary EMS can be used to install a container and takeover the primary EMS role
- Consider one EMS as primary but run all **essrun** commands on another EMS in the list. You cannot move back and fourth between primary and secondary EMS (for deployment or for GUI usage).

### Configuring dual EMS

1. Connect network in the backup EMS as a primary EMS (Mgmt/FSP/Campus).
2. Add backup EMS network hostnames to the `/etc/hosts` file in an existent cluster.
1. Connect network in the backup EMS as primarily EMS (Mgmt/FSP/Campus).

```
bkpEMS.MGMT.Network.IP backupEms.domain backupEms
bkpEMS.HS.Network.IP backupEms-hs.domain backupEms-hs
```

2. Update the backup EMS from the container that is running on the primary EMS.

```
essrun -N backupEms config load -p  
essrun -N backupEms update --precheck  
essrun -N backupEms update --offline
```

3. Create network bonds.

```
essrun -N backupEms network --suffix=-hs
```

4. Add the backup EMS to the existent cluster from the container that is running in the primary EMS.

```
essrun -N primarilyEms cluster --add-ems backupEms --suffix=-hs
```

5. Check if successful checks.

```
essrun -N backupEms config check
```

6. Add the backup EMS to the GUI configuration.

```
essrun -N backupEms gui --configure
```

## Appendix AA. Network bridges cleanup from an EMS node (applicable for a POWER8 or POWER9 EMS node only)

In earlier ESS releases, the **mgmt\_bridge** and **fsp\_bridge** bridges are used on a POWER8 or POWER9 EMS node to serve the management and BMC network connectivity to the ESS deployment container. Starting from ESS 6.1.8.2, these bridges are not needed on a POWER8 or POWER9 EMS node.

The ESS container uses Podman inbuilt CNI network to manage container IPs. Therefore, you need not to plan for any networking for the container. This simplifies the network design of the ESS deployment container and reduce the networking overhead.

The Legacy POWER8 EMS node has the similar modifications. The POWER8 EMS node does not use udev rules to rename the network interface. Therefore, when the **mgmt\_bridge** bridge is deleted, the IP will not be needed and the IP of the **fsp\_bridge** goes back to the original network interface.

Without these bridges, the **mgmt** IPs of the **mgmt\_bridge** and **fsp** IPs of the **fsp\_bridge** goes back to the original **mgmt** and **fsp** for POWER9 systems and **enP3p9s0f0** and **enP3p9s0f3** for POWER8 systems.

When the ESS 6.1.8.3 container starts, an error appears if an IP address is not detected on the management interface and the **mgmt\_bridge** exists. To perform the automatic bridging conversion process before starting the container, issue the following command:

```
essmkym1 --clean-network
```

A sample is as follows:

```
[root@essemi1 deploy]# sh ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le --silent --start-container
-- [INFO] Supported version of the node 5105-22E found. Continuing... --
-- [INFO] Supported version of the OS found. Continuing... --
-- [INFO] Extracting License Acceptance Process Tool to ./ --
-- [INFO] Installing JRE --
-- [INFO] Invoking License Acceptance Process Tool --
-- [INFO] License Agreement Terms accepted --
-- [INFO] Extracting Product to ./ --
-- [INFO] Going to check SHA256 of ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le --
ess_6.1.8.3_1009-02_dae_ppc64le: OK
-- [INFO] Checksum is valid, continuing --
-- [INFO] Checking if there is enough free space at ./ --
-- [INFO] Free space check PASSED --
-- [INFO] podman version 1.6.4 is already installed --
-- [INFO] Code extraction completed successfully --
-- [INFO] Python3 link found. Continuing --
2023-08-17 16:38:19,685 ERROR:      mgmt_bridge present at node. Starting 6182 "mgmt_bridge"
should be deleted and Management IP should be assigned to actual management interface like
"mgmt". Please go to the extracted directory (.dir) and run './essmkym1 --cleanup-network'
command to cleanup the network bridges. After that, rerun './essmkym1' command without any
switch/argument to start the container.
2023-08-17 16:38:19,685 INFO:      Please perform cleanup of network bridges before starting
container... Exiting...
-- [INFO] Removing License Acceptance Process Tool from ./ --
-- [INFO] Removing JRE from ./ --
[root@essemi1 deploy]#
```

### Notes:

- The second management IP of the **enP3p9s0f1** interface for POWER8 EMS uses the **enP3p9s0f0** interface, which will already have the management IP assigned, and the **mgmt\_bridge** is no longer needed.
- No change is noted in the BYOE (EMSVM) and IBM Elastic Storage System Utility Node (EMSVM-23E) because the above methodology was implemented for the original release. There is no need of the **mgmt\_bridge** or **fsp\_bridge** in these implementations.



# Appendix AB. IBM Elastic Storage System Utility Node (MTM 5149 - 23E)

The IBM Elastic Storage System Utility Node (MTM 5149 - 23E), also called as utility node, is an x86 management server, which is fully sold and supported by IBM.

## Overview of the utility node



| 2U-E7300C Front Panel LED and Buttons |             |    |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|----|-----------------------------|
| 1                                     | LAN1 LED    | 6  | RESET Button                |
| 2                                     | LAN2 LED    | 7  | ID Button                   |
| 3                                     | ID LED      | 8  | Power Button with green LED |
| 4                                     | Warning LED | 9  | USB 3.1 Port                |
| 5                                     | M.2 SSD LED | 10 | USB 3.1 Port                |

Figure 36. 2U-E7300C front panel LEDs and buttons

General information is as follows:

- MTM is 5149-23E; Single Socket EMS; FC AK1N
- Single proc feature code EN2X
- System ships with 6.1.8.0 MSL code (v118 SSR)
- License: Single embedded license for host and guest
- 32G memory DIMMs only
- Single Socket 128G default (maximum 512G)
- Host and guest run RH9.1 (python 3.9); container runs RH8.6 (python 3.6)
- RAS service runs on host and guest. Communication via virtual bridge (virbr1/ras)
- CX6 VPI dual port adapter support only (FC AJZL)
- Shasta 4x 10GbE adapter (FC EN2X)

## Support statements and metrix

Support statements are as follows:

- Rack shipments are not supported currently. See the hardware guide racking instructions for how to place the 5149-23E in a rack. This restriction may be lifted in the future.

**Note:** ESS 3500 can be shipped in a rack.

- P9 EMS is still the default EMS when placing an order (with ESS 3500).
- Cannot order utility node in combination with any POWER node (including P9 EMS or P9 Protocol node).
- The utility node only supports the ESS 3500/3500 VM. Cannot deploy/management any type of ESS offering (that is ESS 5000, 3200, 3000, Legacy).
- Only a single EMS Utility Node is supported in a cluster day 1. Cannot mix P9 EMS and Utility Node EM in the same environment.
- Cannot mix utility node (Protocol) with P9 EMS.
- Dual EMS is not supported for Utility Node (TBD).
- P9 EM to utility node conversion is not supported (TBD).

This matrix shows what each EMS can and cannot deploy/upgrade.

| Node type            | P8 EMS | P9 EMS | BYOE host | BYOE guest | Utility node host | Utility node guest | ESS 5000 I/O | ESS 3000 | ESS 3200 | Legacy I/O | ESS 3500 /VM | P8 Protocol | P9 Protocol |
|----------------------|--------|--------|-----------|------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------|----------|----------|------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| P8 EMS               | *      | N      | N         | N          | N                 | N                  | N            | Y        | N        | Y          | N            | Y           | N           |
| P9 EMS               | *      | Y      | N         | N          | N                 | N                  | Y            | Y        | Y        | Y          | Y            | Y           | Y           |
| BYOE (guest)         | N      | N      | N         | Y          | N                 | N                  | N            | N        | N        | N          | Y            | N           | N           |
| Utility node (guest) | N      | N      | N         | N          | *                 | Y                  | N            | N        | N        | N          | Y            | N           | N           |

\* Deploy/upgrade of itself is possible under certain conditions.

This matrix shows what each EMS can and cannot be mixed with the same cluster.

| EMS/ node type       | P8 EMS | P9 EMS | BYOE guest | Utility EMS | ESS 5000 I/O | ESS 3000 | ESS 3200 | Legacy I/O | ESS 3500/ VM | P8 Protocol | P9 Protocol |
|----------------------|--------|--------|------------|-------------|--------------|----------|----------|------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| P8 EMS               | N      | N      | N          | N           | N            | Y        | N        | Y          | N            | Y           | N           |
| P9 EMS               | N      | Y      | N          | N           | Y            | Y        | Y        | Y          | Y            | Y           | Y           |
| BYOE (guest)         | N      | N      | N          | N           | N            | N        | N        | N          | Y            | N           | N           |
| Utility node (guest) | N      | N      | N          | N           | N            | N        | N        | N          | Y            | N           | N           |
| ESS 5000 I/O         | N      | Y      | N          | N           | Y            | Y        | Y        | Y          | Y            | Y           | Y           |

| EMS/<br>node<br>type | P8<br>EMS | P9<br>EMS | BYOE<br>guest | Utility<br>EMS | ESS<br>5000<br>I/O | ESS<br>3000 | ESS<br>3200 | Legac<br>y I/O | ESS<br>3500/<br>VM | P8<br>Protoc<br>ol | P9<br>Protoc<br>ol |
|----------------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| ESS<br>3000          | Y         | Y         | N             | N              | Y                  | Y           | Y           | Y              | Y                  | Y                  | Y                  |
| ESS<br>3200          | N         | Y         | N             | N              | Y                  | Y           | Y           | Y              | Y                  | Y                  | Y                  |
| Legacy<br>I/O        | Y         | Y         | N             | N              | Y                  | Y           | Y           | Y              | Y                  | Y                  | Y                  |
| ESS<br>3500/<br>VM   | N         | Y         | Y             | Y              | Y                  | Y           | Y           | Y              | Y                  | Y                  | Y                  |
| P8<br>Protoc<br>ol   | Y         | Y         |               |                | Y                  | Y           | Y           | Y              | I/O<br>only        | Y                  | Y                  |
| P9<br>Protoc<br>ol   | N         | Y         | N             | N              | Y                  | Y           | Y           | Y              | I/O<br>only        | Y                  | Y                  |

## High-level specifications

- 2U (25" Depth) Rack Server, CRPS Redundant P/S
- Processor
  - Single Socket SP3 (LGA4094)
  - Support AMD® EPYCTM 7003 and 7002
  - Processors
- Memory
  - Up to 8 TB
  - 16 DIMM slots per CPU (8 channels per CPU)
  - Supports RDIMM, LRDIMM, RDIMM/LRDIMM-3DS
  - PCIe adapter Slots
    - 4 x PCIe 4.0 x16 + 1 PCIe 4.0 x8 RISER Slots (not used)
    - 1 x OCP NIC 3.0 Slot (PCIe 4.0 x16) (not used)
- Boot Drive
  - 2 x M.2 Micron 7450 PCIe 4.0 x4 for OS
  - System Management and BMC
    - 1 x 1Gb Enet for BMC (IPMI 2.0) and SOL
    - 2 x 10Gbit LAN for management (Mgmt/SSR/Others)

## Memory and slot configuration

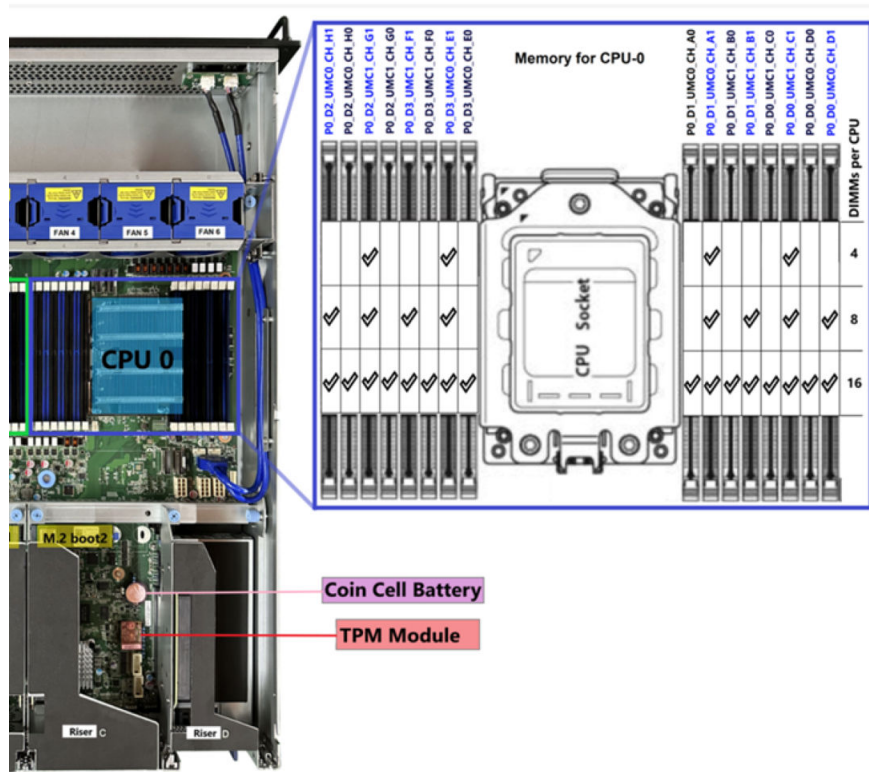


Figure 37. Memory and slots

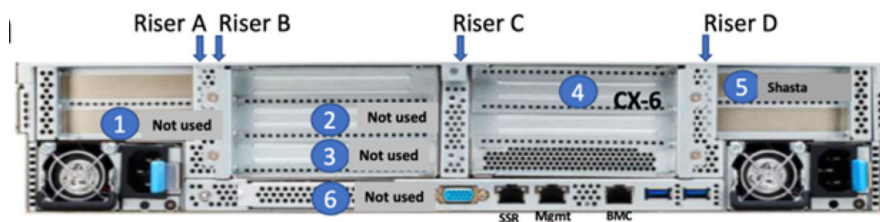


Figure 38. Risers

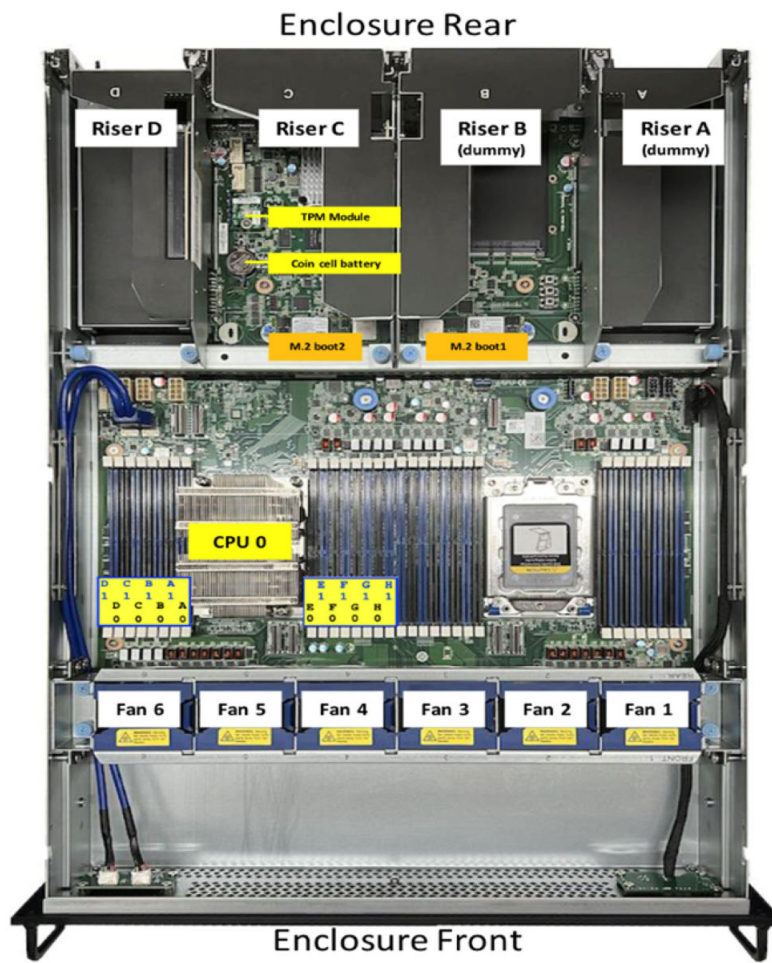


Figure 39. Enclosure rear view

| Chan ID | Slot Location Code | Number of DIMMs per CPU |   |    |
|---------|--------------------|-------------------------|---|----|
|         |                    | 4                       | 8 | 16 |
| D1      | P0_D0_UMC0_CH_D1   |                         | ✓ | ✓  |
| D0      | P0_D0_UMC0_CH_D0   |                         |   | ✓  |
| C1      | P0_D0_UMC1_CH_C1   | ✓                       | ✓ | ✓  |
| C0      | P0_D0_UMC1_CH_C0   |                         |   | ✓  |
| B1      | P0_D1_UMC1_CH_B1   |                         | ✓ | ✓  |
| B0      | P0_D1_UMC1_CH_B0   |                         |   | ✓  |
| A1      | P0_D1_UMC0_CH_A1   | ✓                       | ✓ | ✓  |
| A0      | P0_D1_UMC0_CH_A0   |                         |   | ✓  |
| CPU 0   |                    |                         |   |    |
| E0      | P0_D3_UMC0_CH_E0   |                         |   | ✓  |
| E1      | P0_D3_UMC0_CH_E1   | ✓                       | ✓ | ✓  |
| F0      | P0_D3_UMC1_CH_F0   |                         |   | ✓  |
| F1      | P0_D3_UMC1_CH_F1   |                         | ✓ | ✓  |
| G0      | P0_D2_UMC1_CH_G0   |                         |   | ✓  |
| G1      | P0_D2_UMC1_CH_G1   | ✓                       | ✓ | ✓  |
| H0      | P0_D2_UMC0_CH_H0   |                         |   | ✓  |
| H1      | P0_D2_UMC0_CH_H1   |                         | ✓ | ✓  |

Figure 40. DIMMs

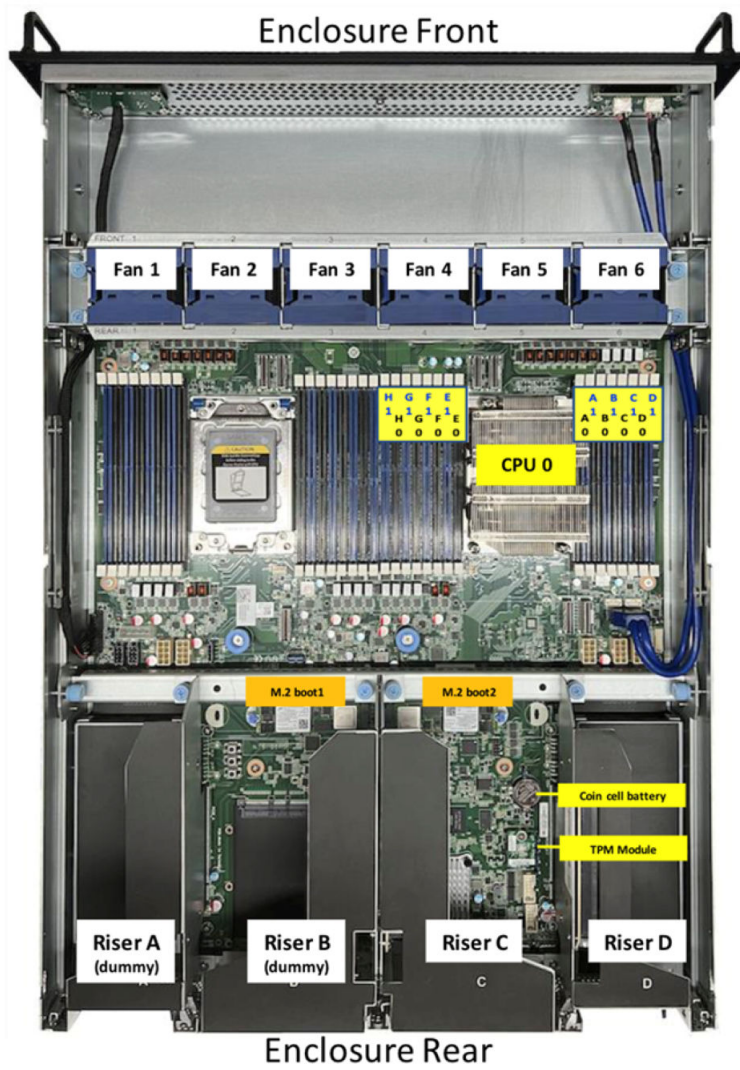


Figure 41. Enclosure front view

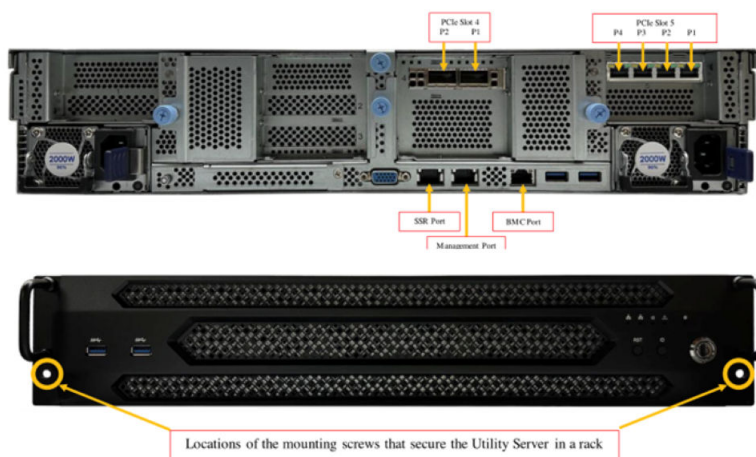


Figure 42. PCie slots

## Networking

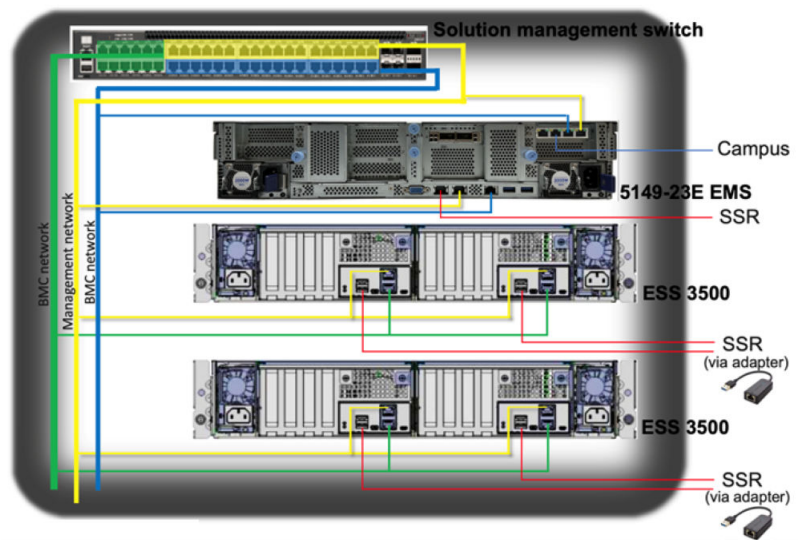


Figure 43. Networks

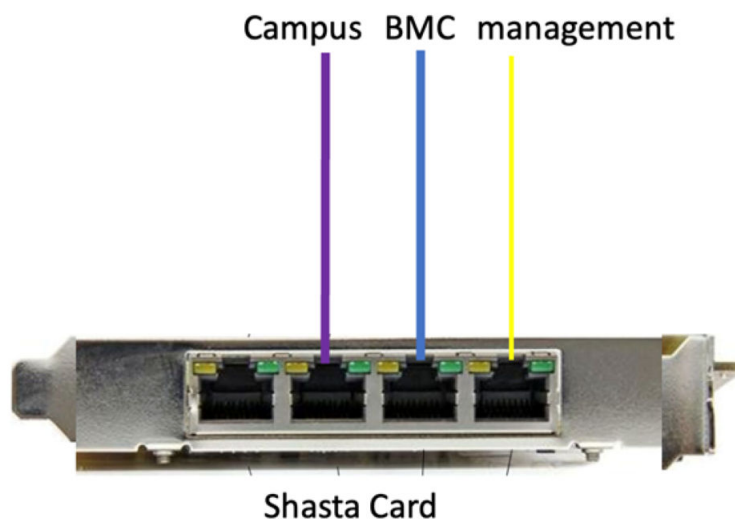


Figure 44. Shasta card

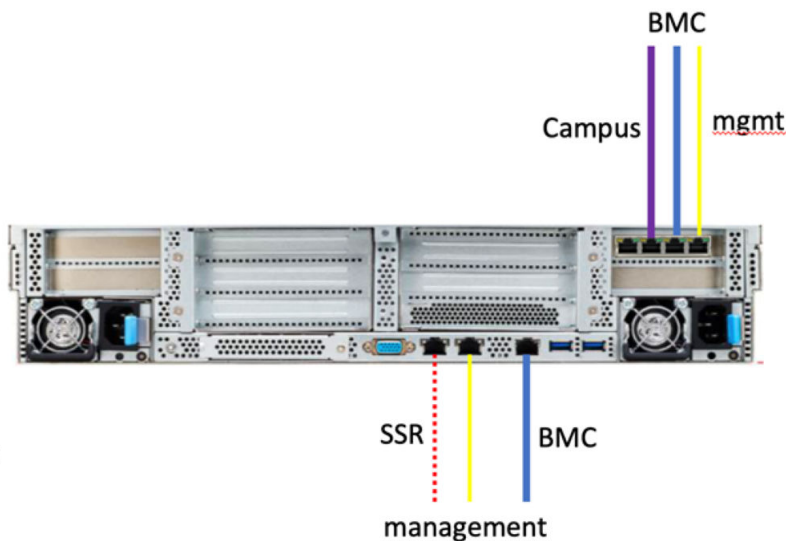


Figure 45. Management ports

## Hardware monitoring/RAS

The HAL daemon runs on both a host and a guest. This daemon aids in the host hardware monitoring, which supports the `mmhealth` command, GUI, and call home.

- Minimum HAL version on both host and guest = `ibm-ess-hal-3.0.0.0-17.4.x86_64.rpm`.
- The virtual bridge allows the HAL daemons to communicate between host and guest.
- Host bridge is called `virbr1` (IP address = `192.168.110.1/24`).
- Guest bridge is called `ras` (IP address = `192.168.110.111/24`).

## An example of VPD

HOST

```
root@utility1 EMSVM]# dmidecode -t1
# dmidecode 3.3
Getting SMBIOS data from sysfs.
SMBIOS 3.3.0 present.
```

```
Handle 0x0001, DMI type 1, 27 bytes
System Information
    Manufacturer: IBM
    Product Name: Scale U1 : -[5149-23E]-
    Version: P38562
    Serial Number: 78P4304
    UUID: 52820000-4a43-4656-3343-4d3433303154
    Wake-up Type: Power Switch
    SKU Number: 5149-23E
    Family: IBM Storage Scale System
```

GUEST

```
[root@emsvm1 ~]# dmidecode -t1
# dmidecode 3.3
Getting SMBIOS data from sysfs.
SMBIOS 2.8 present.
```

```
Handle 0x0100, DMI type 1, 27 bytes
System Information
    Manufacturer: IBM
    Product Name: EMSVM-23E
    Version: 1.3
    Serial Number: 78P4304
    UUID: cbc9232f-b01b-455a-b8d3-426c56294a27
    Wake-up Type: Power Switch
    SKU Number: 5149-23E
    Family: IBM Storage Scale System
```

## Deployment requisites

- IBM Fix Central items
  - QCOW (VM) image

ESS\_VM-6.1.8.3-x86\_64-UTILITY-EMS.tgz

- 6.1.8.3 x86 container (DAE or DME)

ESS\_DAE\_UNIFIED-6.1.8.3-x86\_64-EMS.tgz  
ESS\_DME\_UNIFIED-6.1.8.3-x86\_64-EMS.tgz

- GitHub

- The emsvm script (minimum version is 1.3). For more information, see [EMSVM repository](#).

## An example of an EMSVM host check output

```
[root@utility1 EMSVM]# ./emsvm --check-host
2023-08-17 00:49:33,330 INFO: Welcome to emsvm version 1.3
2023-08-17 00:49:33,330 INFO: Please visit https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM for known issues
and ensure you are running latest version
2023-08-17 00:49:33,330 INFO: Log file with details for this run is saved on: /var/log/
emsvm/emsvm_check_host_2023_08_17_00_49_33.log
2023-08-17 00:49:33,340 INFO: This system is AMD EPYC based
2023-08-17 00:49:33,340 INFO: This host does not have AMD EPYC 1st Generation (Naples)
2023-08-17 00:49:33,401 INFO: This host CPU[s] are KVM capable and has extensions enabled
2023-08-17 00:49:33,401 INFO: Going to check if /dev/kvm exists
2023-08-17 00:49:33,401 INFO: The device /dev/kvm exists
2023-08-17 00:49:34,120 INFO: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9.1 is a supported OS
2023-08-17 00:49:34,125 INFO: Checking RPM packages status
2023-08-17 00:49:34,247 INFO: All required RPM packages have the expected installation
status
2023-08-17 00:49:34,291 WARNING: Could not get current version from repository, please be
sure that you are running latest version from https://github.com/IBM/EMSVM
2023-08-17 00:49:34,291 INFO: Please manually check that you are running the latest
version. Any issue needs to be reproduced with the latest version
2023-08-17 00:49:39,296 INFO: Looking that we have at least one NIC for High Speed Network
(HSN)
2023-08-17 00:49:39,315 INFO: The PCI address 0000:01:00.0 has a negotiated link speed of
16 GT/s and 16 lines
2023-08-17 00:49:39,315 INFO: The NIC 'Infiniband controller: Mellanox Technologies MT28908
Family [ConnectX-6]' is OK as HSN NIC. Going to append PCI address '0000:01:00.0' as HSN NIC
2023-08-17 00:49:39,328 INFO: The PCI address 0000:01:00.1 has a negotiated link speed of
16 GT/s and 16 lines
2023-08-17 00:49:39,328 INFO: The NIC 'Infiniband controller: Mellanox Technologies MT28908
Family [ConnectX-6]' is OK as HSN NIC. Going to append PCI address '0000:01:00.1' as HSN NIC
2023-08-17 00:49:39,333 INFO: Found at least two HSN ports
2023-08-17 00:49:39,334 INFO: Looking that we have at least one quad port Ethernet NIC for
Low Speed Network (LSN)
2023-08-17 00:49:39,337 INFO: The NIC 'Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation Ethernet
Controller X710 for 10GBASE-T (rev 02)' is OK as LSN NIC. Going to append PCI address
'0000:25:00.' for ports 0, 1, 2 and 3
2023-08-17 00:49:39,337 INFO: Host has 32 core[s] which complies with 32 cores required
2023-08-17 00:49:39,337 INFO: Host memory of 125.24 GB is less than 247 GB required
2023-08-17 00:49:39,337 INFO: Host memory of 125.24 GB is equal or more than 247 GB
required for small setups of two or less EMS units
2023-08-17 00:49:39,664 INFO: Current tune profile is 'virtual-host'
2023-08-17 00:49:39,745 INFO: OS settings match the running profile
2023-08-17 00:49:39,812 INFO: KVM storage pool EMSVM already exists
2023-08-17 00:49:39,816 INFO: The path /emsvm has 683.15 GB free excluding reserved space
which is more than the required 575 GB
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: KVM executable file /usr/libexec/qemu-kvm exists
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO:
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: -----
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: | Summary of this run |
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: -----
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO:
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: Log file with details for this run is saved on: /var/log/
emsvm/emsvm_check_host_2023_08_17_00_49_33.log
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: Start of the checks on: 2023/08/17 00:49:33
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: End of the checks on: 2023/08/17 00:49:39
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: All tests were passed passed on 'utility1' host
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: This EMSVM setup can only manage two or less ESS units. If
more units are to be managed this host is NOT supported
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: The path /emsvm has 683.15 GB free excluding reserved space
which is more than the required 575 GB
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: CPU model is AMD EPYC 7313 16-Core Processor
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: This host has 2 socket(s)
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: The VM CPU cores would be 30 core[s]
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: The VM memory would be 114 GB
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO: The VM HSN PCI address[es] would be ['0000:01:00.0',
```

```
'0000:01:00.1']
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO:      The VM LSN PCI addressses would be ['0000:25:00.0',
'0000:25:00.1', '0000:25:00.2', '0000:25:00.3']
2023-08-17 00:49:39,819 INFO:      OS is running and matching tune profile virtual-host

WARNING: All tests passed, you can run EMSVM on utility1 host, for small setups of two or less
ESS units only

[root@utility1 EMSVM]#
```

## Deployment information

- For process such as BYOE (QCOW, emsvm script, connecting to console and so on), see [Appendix Y, “Bring your own EMS,”](#) on page 151.
- When the container is up and IPs are set. Copy the container to the VM, update the `/etc/hosts` file and follow the normal deployment flow (that is, POWER9 EMS). For more information, see the *Quick Deployment Guide* in the [ESS documentation](#).



## Accessibility features for the system

---

Accessibility features help users who have a disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use information technology products successfully.

### Accessibility features

---

The following list includes the major accessibility features in IBM Spectrum Scale RAID:

- Keyboard-only operation
- Interfaces that are commonly used by screen readers
- Keys that are discernible by touch but do not activate just by touching them
- Industry-standard devices for ports and connectors
- The attachment of alternative input and output devices

IBM Documentation, and its related publications, are accessibility-enabled.

### Keyboard navigation

---

This product uses standard Microsoft Windows navigation keys.

### IBM and accessibility

---

See the [IBM Human Ability and Accessibility Center \(www.ibm.com/able\)](http://www.ibm.com/able) for more information about the commitment that IBM has to accessibility.



## Notices

---

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing IBM Corporation North Castle Drive Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

Intellectual Property Licensing Legal and Intellectual Property Law IBM Japan Ltd. 19-21,  
Nihonbashi-Hakozakicho, Chuo-ku Tokyo 103-8510, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation  
Dept. 30ZA/Building 707  
Mail Station P300  
2455 South Road,  
Poughkeepsie, NY 12601-5400  
U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment or a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

#### COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. The sample programs are provided "AS IS", without warranty of any kind. IBM shall not be liable for any damages arising out of your use of the sample programs.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

## Trademarks

---

IBM, the IBM logo, and [ibm.com](http://ibm.com) are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at "[Copyright and trademark information](http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml)" at [www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml](http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml).

Intel is a trademark of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The registered trademark Linux is used pursuant to a sublicense from the Linux Foundation, the exclusive licensee of Linus Torvalds, owner of the mark on a worldwide basis.

Microsoft, Windows, and Windows NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Red Hat and Ansible are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

## Terms and conditions for product documentation

---

Permissions for the use of these publications are granted subject to the following terms and conditions.

## **IBM Privacy Policy**

At IBM we recognize the importance of protecting your personal information and are committed to processing it responsibly and in compliance with applicable data protection laws in all countries in which IBM operates.

Visit the IBM Privacy Policy for additional information on this topic at <https://www.ibm.com/privacy/details/us/en/>.

## **Applicability**

These terms and conditions are in addition to any terms of use for the IBM website.

## **Personal use**

You can reproduce these publications for your personal, noncommercial use provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You cannot distribute, display, or make derivative work of these publications, or any portion thereof, without the express consent of IBM.

## **Commercial use**

You can reproduce, distribute, and display these publications solely within your enterprise provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You cannot make derivative works of these publications, or reproduce, distribute, or display these publications or any portion thereof outside your enterprise, without the express consent of IBM.

## **Rights**

Except as expressly granted in this permission, no other permissions, licenses, or rights are granted, either express or implied, to the Publications or any information, data, software or other intellectual property contained therein.

IBM reserves the right to withdraw the permissions that are granted herein whenever, in its discretion, the use of the publications is detrimental to its interest or as determined by IBM, the above instructions are not being properly followed.

You cannot download, export, or reexport this information except in full compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including all United States export laws and regulations.

IBM MAKES NO GUARANTEE ABOUT THE CONTENT OF THESE PUBLICATIONS. THE PUBLICATIONS ARE PROVIDED "AS-IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.



# Glossary

---

This glossary provides terms and definitions for the IBM Elastic Storage System solution.

The following cross-references are used in this glossary:

- *See* refers you from a non-preferred term to the preferred term or from an abbreviation to the spelled-out form.
- *See also* refers you to a related or contrasting term.

For other terms and definitions, see the [IBM Terminology website](http://www.ibm.com/software/globalization/terminology) (opens in new window):

<http://www.ibm.com/software/globalization/terminology>

## B

### **building block**

A pair of servers with shared disk enclosures attached.

### **BOOTP**

*See Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP).*

### **Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP)**

A computer networking protocol that is used in IP networks to automatically assign an IP address to network devices from a configuration server.

## C

### **CEC**

*See central processor complex (CPC).*

### **central electronic complex (CEC)**

*See central processor complex (CPC).*

### **central processor complex (CPC)**

A physical collection of hardware that consists of channels, timers, main storage, and one or more central processors.

### **cluster**

A loosely-coupled collection of independent systems, or *nodes*, organized into a network for the purpose of sharing resources and communicating with each other. *See also GPFS cluster.*

### **cluster manager**

The node that monitors node status using disk leases, detects failures, drives recovery, and selects file system managers. The cluster manager is the node with the lowest node number among the quorum nodes that are operating at a particular time.

### **compute node**

A node with a mounted GPFS file system that is used specifically to run a customer job. ESS disks are not directly visible from and are not managed by this type of node.

### **CPC**

*See central processor complex (CPC).*

## D

### **DA**

*See declustered array (DA).*

### **datagram**

A basic transfer unit associated with a packet-switched network.

### **DCM**

*See drawer control module (DCM).*

**declustered array (DA)**

A disjoint subset of the pdisks in a recovery group.

**dependent fileset**

A fileset that shares the inode space of an existing independent fileset.

**DFM**

See *direct FSP management (DFM)*.

**DHCP**

See *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)*.

**drawer control module (DCM)**

Essentially, a SAS expander on a storage enclosure drawer.

**Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)**

A standardized network protocol that is used on IP networks to dynamically distribute such network configuration parameters as IP addresses for interfaces and services.

**E****Elastic Storage System (ESS)**

A high-performance, GPFS NSD solution made up of one or more building blocks. The ESS software runs on ESS nodes - management server nodes and I/O server nodes.

**encryption key**

A mathematical value that allows components to verify that they are in communication with the expected server. Encryption keys are based on a public or private key pair that is created during the installation process. See also *file encryption key (FEK)*, *master encryption key (MEK)*.

**ESS**

See *Elastic Storage System (ESS)*.

**environmental service module (ESM)**

Essentially, a SAS expander that attaches to the storage enclosure drives. In the case of multiple drawers in a storage enclosure, the ESM attaches to drawer control modules.

**ESM**

See *environmental service module (ESM)*.

**F****failback**

Cluster recovery from failover following repair. See also *failover*.

**failover**

(1) The assumption of file system duties by another node when a node fails. (2) The process of transferring all control of the ESS to a single cluster in the ESS when the other clusters in the ESS fails. See also *cluster*. (3) The routing of all transactions to a second controller when the first controller fails. See also *cluster*.

**failure group**

A collection of disks that share common access paths or adapter connection, and could all become unavailable through a single hardware failure.

**FEK**

See *file encryption key (FEK)*.

**file encryption key (FEK)**

A key used to encrypt sectors of an individual file. See also *encryption key*.

**file system**

The methods and data structures used to control how data is stored and retrieved.

**file system descriptor**

A data structure containing key information about a file system. This information includes the disks assigned to the file system (*stripe group*), the current state of the file system, and pointers to key files such as quota files and log files.

**file system descriptor quorum**

The number of disks needed in order to write the file system descriptor correctly.

**file system manager**

The provider of services for all the nodes using a single file system. A file system manager processes changes to the state or description of the file system, controls the regions of disks that are allocated to each node, and controls token management and quota management.

**fileset**

A hierarchical grouping of files managed as a unit for balancing workload across a cluster. See also *dependent fileset*, *independent fileset*.

**fileset snapshot**

A snapshot of an independent fileset plus all dependent filesets.

**flexible service processor (FSP)**

Firmware that provides diagnosis, initialization, configuration, runtime error detection, and correction. Connects to the HMC.

**FQDN**

See *fully-qualified domain name (FQDN)*.

**FSP**

See *flexible service processor (FSP)*.

**fully-qualified domain name (FQDN)**

The complete domain name for a specific computer, or host, on the Internet. The FQDN consists of two parts: the hostname and the domain name.

**G****GPFS cluster**

A cluster of nodes defined as being available for use by GPFS file systems.

**GPFS portability layer**

The interface module that each installation must build for its specific hardware platform and Linux distribution.

**GPFS Storage Server (GSS)**

A high-performance, GPFS NSD solution made up of one or more building blocks that runs on System x servers.

**GSS**

See *GPFS Storage Server (GSS)*.

**H****Hardware Management Console (HMC)**

Standard interface for configuring and operating partitioned (LPAR) and SMP systems.

**HMC**

See *Hardware Management Console (HMC)*.

**I****IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager (ISKLM)**

For GPFS encryption, the ISKLM is used as an RKM server to store MEKs.

**independent fileset**

A fileset that has its own inode space.

**indirect block**

A block that contains pointers to other blocks.

**inode**

The internal structure that describes the individual files in the file system. There is one inode for each file.

**inode space**

A collection of inode number ranges reserved for an independent fileset, which enables more efficient per-fileset functions.

**Internet Protocol (IP)**

The primary communication protocol for relaying datagrams across network boundaries. Its routing function enables internetworking and essentially establishes the Internet.

**I/O server node**

An ESS node that is attached to the ESS storage enclosures. It is the NSD server for the GPFS cluster.

**IP**

See *Internet Protocol (IP)*.

**IP over InfiniBand (IPoIB)**

Provides an IP network emulation layer on top of InfiniBand RDMA networks, which allows existing applications to run over InfiniBand networks unmodified.

**IPoIB**

See *IP over InfiniBand (IPoIB)*.

**ISKLM**

See *IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager (ISKLM)*.

**J****JBOD array**

The total collection of disks and enclosures over which a recovery group pair is defined.

**K****kernel**

The part of an operating system that contains programs for such tasks as input/output, management and control of hardware, and the scheduling of user tasks.

**L****LACP**

See *Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)*.

**Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)**

Provides a way to control the bundling of several physical ports together to form a single logical channel.

**logical partition (LPAR)**

A subset of a server's hardware resources virtualized as a separate computer, each with its own operating system. See also *node*.

**LPAR**

See *logical partition (LPAR)*.

**M****management network**

A network that is primarily responsible for booting and installing the designated server and compute nodes from the management server.

**management server (MS)**

An ESS node that hosts the ESS GUI and is not connected to storage. It must be part of a GPFS cluster. From a system management perspective, it is the central coordinator of the cluster. It also serves as a client node in an ESS building block.

**master encryption key (MEK)**

A key that is used to encrypt other keys. See also *encryption key*.

**maximum transmission unit (MTU)**

The largest packet or frame, specified in octets (eight-bit bytes), that can be sent in a packet- or frame-based network, such as the Internet. The TCP uses the MTU to determine the maximum size of each packet in any transmission.

**MEK**

See *master encryption key (MEK)*.

**metadata**

A data structure that contains access information about file data. Such structures include inodes, indirect blocks, and directories. These data structures are not accessible to user applications.

**MS**

See *management server (MS)*.

**MTU**

See *maximum transmission unit (MTU)*.

**N****Network File System (NFS)**

A protocol (developed by Sun Microsystems, Incorporated) that allows any host in a network to gain access to another host or netgroup and their file directories.

**Network Shared Disk (NSD)**

A component for cluster-wide disk naming and access.

**NSD volume ID**

A unique 16-digit hexadecimal number that is used to identify and access all NSDs.

**node**

An individual operating-system image within a cluster. Depending on the way in which the computer system is partitioned, it can contain one or more nodes. In a Power Systems environment, synonymous with *logical partition*.

**node descriptor**

A definition that indicates how ESS uses a node. Possible functions include: manager node, client node, quorum node, and non-quorum node.

**node number**

A number that is generated and maintained by ESS as the cluster is created, and as nodes are added to or deleted from the cluster.

**node quorum**

The minimum number of nodes that must be running in order for the daemon to start.

**node quorum with tiebreaker disks**

A form of quorum that allows ESS to run with as little as one quorum node available, as long as there is access to a majority of the quorum disks.

**non-quorum node**

A node in a cluster that is not counted for the purposes of quorum determination.

**O****OFED**

See *OpenFabrics Enterprise Distribution (OFED)*.

**OpenFabrics Enterprise Distribution (OFED)**

An open-source software stack includes software drivers, core kernel code, middleware, and user-level interfaces.

**P****pdisk**

A physical disk.

**PortFast**

A Cisco network function that can be configured to resolve any problems that could be caused by the amount of time STP takes to transition ports to the Forwarding state.

**R****RAID**

See *redundant array of independent disks (RAID)*.

**RDMA**

See *remote direct memory access (RDMA)*.

**redundant array of independent disks (RAID)**

A collection of two or more disk physical drives that present to the host an image of one or more logical disk drives. In the event of a single physical device failure, the data can be read or regenerated from the other disk drives in the array due to data redundancy.

**recovery**

The process of restoring access to file system data when a failure has occurred. Recovery can involve reconstructing data or providing alternative routing through a different server.

**recovery group (RG)**

A collection of disks that is set up by ESS, in which each disk is connected physically to two servers: a primary server and a backup server.

**remote direct memory access (RDMA)**

A direct memory access from the memory of one computer into that of another without involving either one's operating system. This permits high-throughput, low-latency networking, which is especially useful in massively-parallel computer clusters.

**RGD**

See *recovery group data (RGD)*.

**remote key management server (RKM server)**

A server that is used to store master encryption keys.

**RG**

See *recovery group (RG)*.

**recovery group data (RGD)**

Data that is associated with a recovery group.

**RKM server**

See *remote key management server (RKM server)*.

**S****SAS**

See *Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)*.

**secure shell (SSH)**

A cryptographic (encrypted) network protocol for initiating text-based shell sessions securely on remote computers.

**Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)**

A point-to-point serial protocol that moves data to and from such computer storage devices as hard drives and tape drives.

**service network**

A private network that is dedicated to managing POWER8 servers. Provides Ethernet-based connectivity among the FSP, CPC, HMC, and management server.

**SMP**

See *symmetric multiprocessing (SMP)*.

**Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)**

A network protocol that ensures a loop-free topology for any bridged Ethernet local-area network. The basic function of STP is to prevent bridge loops and the broadcast radiation that results from them.

**SSH**

See *secure shell (SSH)*.

**STP**

See *Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)*.

**symmetric multiprocessing (SMP)**

A computer architecture that provides fast performance by making multiple processors available to complete individual processes simultaneously.

**T****TCP**

See *Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)*.

**Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)**

A core protocol of the Internet Protocol Suite that provides reliable, ordered, and error-checked delivery of a stream of octets between applications running on hosts communicating over an IP network.

**V****VCD**

See *vdisk configuration data (VCD)*.

**vdisk**

A virtual disk.

**vdisk configuration data (VCD)**

Configuration data that is associated with a virtual disk.



---

# Index

## A

accessibility features [181](#)  
audience [xi](#)

## C

call home  
    5146 system [47](#)  
    5148 System [47](#)  
    background [47](#)  
    overview [47](#)  
    problem report [56](#)  
    problem report details [57](#)  
Call home  
    monitoring [60](#)  
    Post setup activities [64](#)  
    test [62](#)  
    upload data [61](#)  
comments [xvii](#)

## D

documentation  
    on web [xvi](#)  
Dual 24 port [113](#)

## E

Electronic Service Agent  
    configuration [53](#)  
    Installing [49](#)  
    Reinstalling [62](#)  
    Uninstalling [62](#)

## I

IBM Spectrum Scale  
    call home  
        monitoring [60](#)  
        Post setup activities [64](#)  
        test [62](#)  
        upload data [61](#)  
    Electronic Service Agent [49](#), [62](#)  
    ESA  
        create problem report [56](#), [57](#)  
        problem details [57](#)  
IBM storage Scale  
    ESA  
        configuration [53](#)  
IBM Storage Scale  
    call home [47](#)  
information overview [xi](#)

## L

license inquiries [183](#)

## N

notices [183](#)

## O

overview  
    of information [xi](#)

## P

patent information [183](#)  
preface [xi](#)

## R

resources  
    on web [xvi](#)

## S

submitting [xvii](#)

## T

trademarks [184](#)  
troubleshooting  
    call home [47](#), [49](#), [62](#)  
    call home data upload [61](#)  
    call home monitoring [60](#)  
    Electronic Service Agent  
        problem details [57](#)  
        problem report creation [56](#)  
    ESA [49](#), [53](#), [62](#)  
    Post setup activities for call home [64](#)  
    testing call home [62](#)

## W

web  
    documentation [xvi](#)  
    resources [xvi](#)







Product Number: 5765-DME  
5765-DAE

SC28-3456-03

